

mineral resources

Department: Mineral Resources **REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA** 

# BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT & ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT

NAME OF APPLICANT	Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen	
PREPARED BY	Milnex CC	
TEL NO	(018) 011 1925	
FAX NO	087 231 7021	
POSTAL ADDRESS:	P.O. Box 1086, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780	
PHYSICAL ADDRESS:	4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke, 2780	
SAMRAD REF NUMBER:	NC30/5/1/1/2/13048PR	

#### **PROJECT INFORMATION**

Project Name:Application for an Environmental Authorisation for the proposed Prospecting Right without bulk sampling for the prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond Diamonds (Kimberlite) & Diamonds (DIA) including associated infrastructure on F the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD.					
Report Title:	Report Title: Basic Assessment Report & Environmental Management Programme				
Prepared By:	Milnex CC				
Date:	07/10/2022				
	QUALITY CONTROL:				
Name:	Report Author: Christiaan Baron Master's Degree in Environmental Management Registered EAP (EAPASA) Reg No: 2020/2639	N/A	Report Reviewer:		

Signature:

#### DISCLAIMER:

#### Copyright Milnex CC: All Rights Reserved.

This document contains information proprietary to Milnex CC and as such should be treated as confidential unless specifically identified as a public document by law. Milnex CC owns all copyright and all other intellectual property rights in this report. The document may not be copied, reproduced in whole or in part, or used for any manner without prior written consent from Milnex CC. Copyright is specifically reserved in terms of the Copyright Act 98 of 1987 including amendments thereto. By viewing this disclaimer and by accepting this document, you acknowledge that you have read and accepted these Terms of Use and undertake to keep the information contained herein confidential and not to do any act or allow any act which is in breach of these Terms of Use.

#### The DEA screening tool was used in compiling this document

The Public Participation Process (PPP) must follow Regulation 41 of NEMA EIA Regulations; thus, the process needs to be transparent. However, due to the Protection of Personal Information Act (POPI Act) which commenced on 01 July 2021, Stakeholders, Landowners, surrounding landowners and registered I&AP' addresses, contact details and comments will not be included in any draft report to be circulated. All this information will form part of the final report to be submitted to the Competent Authority only.

Should you be identified as a Stakeholder, Landowner, Surrounding landowner and you do not wish to receive any further communique from Milnex CC regarding the application in question, you may request in writing that your details be removed from the Milnex CC database for this application.

# **CONTENTS**

SCOPING OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT
A) DETAILS OF:
i) THE EAP WHO PREPARED THE REPORT7
ii) EXPERTISE OF THE EAP7
B) DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY
C. LOCALITY MAP9
D. DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY11
i) LISTED AND SPECIFIED ACTIVITIES11
ii) DESCRIPTION OF THE ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE RELATED TO THE DEVELOPMENT
iii) DESCRIPTION OF PLANNED NON-INVASIVE ACTIVITIES:
iv) DESCRIPTION OF PLANNED INVASIVE ACTIVITIES:15
E. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT 17
F. NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES
G. MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE INCLUDING A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE
H. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE, INCLUDING:
i) DETAILS OF THE DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED;
ii) DETAILS OF THE PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS FOLLOWED
iii) SUMMARY OF ISSUES RAISED BY I&APS
iv) THE ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES ASSOCIATED WITH THE SITES
<ul> <li>v) IMPACTS AND RISKS IDENTIFIED INCLUDING THE NATURE, SIGNIFICANCE, CONSEQUENCE, EXTENT, DURATION AND PROBABILITY OF THE IMPACTS, INCLUDING THE DEGREE TO WHICH THESE IMPACTS</li></ul>
vi) METHODOLOGY USED IN DETERMINING AND RANKING THE NATURE, SIGNIFICANCE, CONSEQUENCES, EXTENT, DURATION AND PROBABILITY OF POTENTIAL ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS AND RISKS
vii) THE POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IMPACTS THAT THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY (IN TERMS OF THE INITIAL SITE LAYOUT) AND ALTERNATIVES WILL HAVE ON THE ENVIRONMENT AND THE COMMUNITY THAT MAY BE AFFECTED
viii) THE POSSIBLE MITIGATION MEASURES THAT COULD BE APPLIED AND THE LEVEL OF RISK. 89
ix) MOTIVATION WHERE NO ALTERNATIVE SITES WERE CONSIDERED
x) STATEMENT MOTIVATING THE ALTERNATIVE DEVELOPMENT LOCATION WITHIN THE OVERALL SITE

-		FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ASSESS AND RA IPACTS AND RISKS THE ACTIVITY WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED SITE (IN RESPE E FINAL SITE LAYOUT PLAN) THROUGH THE LIFE OF THE ACTIVITY	ЕСТ
,	J.	AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RIS 94	SK
	REGU	WHERE APPLICABLE, A SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND IMPACTS MANAGEMENT URES IDENTIFIED IN AN SPECIALIST REPORT COMPLYING WITH APPENDIX 6 OF THE LATIONS AND AN INDICATION AS TO HOW THESE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATION BEEN INCLUDED IN THE FINAL REPORT;	IS
I	L.	ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT	105
	M. OUTC(	PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT OMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR	107
I	N.	ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION	108
(	0.	DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN KNOWLEDGE	.108
	P. NOT B	REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OR SHO	-
(	Q.	CONDITIONS THAT MUST BE INCLUDED IN THE AUTHORISATION	109
I	R.	UNDERTAKING	109
;	S.	FINANCIAL PROVISION	110
-	T.	OTHER INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY	110
I	U.	OTHER MATTERS REQUIRED IN TERMS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF THE ACT.	.112
I	ENVIR	ONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT	113
1	A)	DETAILS OF THE EAP	
I	B)	DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY (	
(	C)	COMPOSITE MAP	113
	D) STATE	DESCRIPTION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES INCLUDING MANAGEMENT EMENTS	114
I	E)	IMPACTS TO BE MITIGATED IN THEIR RESPECTIVE PHASES	118
I	F)	IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	145
(	G)	MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	165
I	H)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY	165
I	I)	RESPONSIBLE PERSONS	165
,	J)	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS	165
I	K)	MECHANISM FOR MONITORING COMPLIANCE	165
	L) ASSES	INDICATE THE FREQUENCY OF THE SUBMISSION OF THE PERFORMANCE SSMENT REPORT.	167
l	M)	ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN	167
I	N)	SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY	167

## **IMPORTANT NOTICE**

In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002 as amended), the Minister must grant a prospecting or mining right if among others the mining "will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment".

Unless an Environmental Authorisation can be granted following the evaluation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Programme report in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA), it cannot be concluded that the said activities will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment.

In terms of section 16(3)(b) of the EIA Regulations, 2014, any report submitted as part of an application must be prepared in a format that may be determined by the Competent Authority and in terms of section 17 (1) (c) the competent Authority must check whether the application has taken into account any minimum requirements applicable or instructions or guidance provided by the competent authority to the submission of applications.

It is therefore an instruction that the prescribed reports required in respect of applications for an environmental authorisation for listed activities triggered by an application for a right or permit are submitted in the exact format of, and provide all the information required in terms of, this template. Furthermore, please be advised that failure to submit the information required in the format provided in this template will be regarded as a failure to meet the requirements of the Regulation and will lead to the Environmental Authorisation being refused.

It is furthermore an instruction that the Environmental Assessment Practitioner must process and interpret his/her research and analysis and use the findings thereof to compile the information required herein. (Unprocessed supporting information may be attached as appendices). The EAP must ensure that the information required is placed correctly in the relevant sections of the Report, in the order, and under the provided headings as set out below, and ensure that the report is not cluttered with uninterpreted information and that it unambiguously represents the interpretation of the applicant.

#### **BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT PROCESS**

 The environmental outcomes, impacts and residual risks of the proposed activity must be set out in the basic assessment report.

#### OBJECTIVE OF THE BASIC ASSESSMENT PROCESS

- 2) The objective of the basic assessment process is to, through a consultative process
  - a) determine the policy and legislative context within which the proposed activity is located and how the activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;
  - b) identify the alternatives considered, including the activity, location, and technology alternatives;
  - c) describe the need and desirability of the proposed alternatives[,];
  - d) through the undertaking of an impact and risk assessment process, inclusive of cumulative impacts which focused on determining the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage[], and cultural sensitivity of the sites and locations within sites and the risk of impact of the proposed activity and technology alternatives on [the] these aspects to determine
    - i) the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration, and probability of the impacts occurring to; and
    - ii) the degree to which these impacts
      - aa) can be reversed;
      - bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
      - cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated; and
  - e) through a ranking of the site sensitivities and possible impacts the activity and technology alternatives will impose on the sites and location identified through the life of the activity to
    - i) identify and motivate a preferred site, activity and technology alternative;
    - ii) identify suitable measures to avoid, manage or mitigate identified impacts; and
    - iii) identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.

#### SCOPING OF ASSESSMENT AND CONTENT OF BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT

- A) DETAILS OF:
  - i) THE EAP WHO PREPARED THE REPORT
  - ii) EXPERTISE OF THE EAP

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Christiaan Baron	Master's Degree in Environmental Management (refer to Appendix 1) Registered EAP (EAPASA) Reg No: 2020/2639	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No. : (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <u>christiaan@milnex-sa.co.za</u>

Contact details of Milnex CC	Qualifications	Contact details	
Lizanne Esterhuizen	Honours Degree in Environmental Science (refer to <b>Appendix 1</b> )	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No. : (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <u>lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za</u>	
Andile Nxumalo	Honours Degree in Environmental Science (refer to Appendix 1)	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No. : (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <u>andile.grant@milnex-sa.co.za</u>	

#### Summary of the EAP's past experience. (Attach the EAP's curriculum vitae as Appendix 2)

Milnex CC was contracted by **Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** as the independent environmental consultant to undertake the BAR and EMPr process for the proposed Prospecting Right application without bulk sampling for the prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds (Kimberlite) & Diamonds (DIA) including associated infrastructure on Portion 3 of the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD. The property is located approximately 28km West of Hopetown in the Northern Cape Province. Milnex CC does not have any interest in secondary developments that may arise out of the authorisation of the proposed project

Milnex CC is a specialist environmental consultancy with extensive consulting experience in the mining industry which provides a holistic environmental management service, including environmental assessment and planning to ensure compliance with relevant environmental legislation. Milnex CC benefits from the pooled resources, diverse skills and experience in the environmental and mining field held by its team that has been actively involved in undertaking environmental studies for a wide variety of mining related projects throughout South Africa. The Milnex CC team has considerable experience in environmental impact assessment and environmental management, especially in the mining industry.

Christiaan Baron & Lizanne Esterhuizen have extensive consulting experience in the Environmental Field. Their key focus is on environmental assessment, advice and management and ensuring compliance to legislation and guidelines. They are currently involved in undertaking EIAs for several projects across the country (refer to **Appendix 2** for CV)

# B) DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY.

Farm Name:	Portion 3 of the farm Deelfontein 237 Registration division: Hopetown RD Extent: 2291.7235 hectares Title Deed: T59016/2001CTN Province: Northern Cape
Application area (Ha)	2291.7235 hectares
Magisterial district:	Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality
Local Municipality Thembelihle Local Municipality	
Registration Division	Hopetown
Distance and direction from nearest town	The property is located approximately 28km West of Hopetown in the Northern Cape Province.
21 digit Surveyor General Code for each farm portion	C033000000023700003
	Diamond (Alluvial)
Minerals Applied for	Diamond (General)
	Diamonds (Kimberlite)
	Diamonds

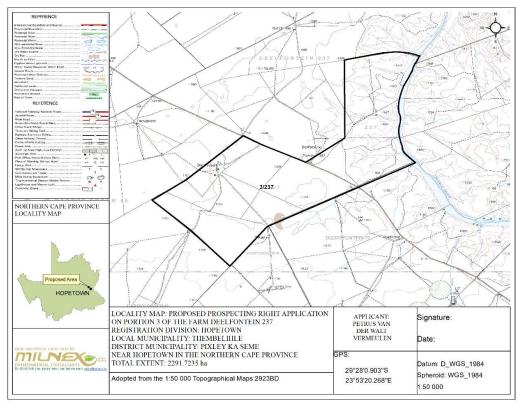
# III. FARM CO-ORDINATES

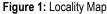
Farm	Longitude	Latitude
	23° 50' 2.437" E	29° 28' 34.207" S
	23° 50' 42.941" E	29° 28' 9.987" S
	23° 51' 51.331" E	29° 27' 17.268" S
	23° 52' 13.071" E	29° 27' 27.650" S
	23° 52' 15.851" E	29° 27' 28.983" S
	23° 53' 6.067" E	29° 27' 48.914" S
	23° 53' 52.479" E	29° 27' 19.950" S
	23° 53' 52.020" E	29° 25' 46.948" S
	23° 53' 55.565" E	29° 25' 46.094" S
	23° 54' 36.865" E	29° 25' 38.551" S
	23° 54' 54.342" E	29° 25' 36.999" S
Portion 3 of the farm Deelfontein 237	23° 55' 9.870" E	29° 25' 38.580" S
Registration division: Hopetown RD	23° 55' 14.965" E	29° 25' 40.044" S
	23° 55' 22.075" E	29° 25' 42.085" S
	23° 55' 21.184" E	29° 25' 43.277" S
	23° 55' 19.304" E	29° 25' 46.775" S
	23° 55' 17.601" E	29° 25' 49.711" S
	23° 55' 16.259" E	29° 25' 51.381" S
	23° 55' 14.193" E	29° 25' 55.724" S
	23° 55' 13.104" E	29° 25' 59.807" S
	23° 55' 10.727" E	29° 26' 3.719" S
	23° 55' 9.171" E	29° 26' 7.189" S
	23° 55' 5.613" E	29° 26' 12.774" S
	23° 55' 2.709" E	29° 26' 18.090" S
	23° 55' 0.788" E	29° 26' 23.003" S

23° 54' 58.481" E	29° 26' 30.032" S
23° 54' 56.992" E	29° 26' 36.796" S
23° 54' 56.509" E	29° 26' 42.307" S
23° 54' 56.709" E	29° 26' 46.560" S
23° 54' 57.253" E	29° 26' 50.111" S
23° 54' 58.909" E	29° 26' 54.396" S
23° 54' 59.001" E	29° 26' 56.805" S
23° 54' 58.713" E	29° 27' 1.188" S
23° 54' 57.653" E	29° 27' 5.191" S
23° 54' 56.867" E	29° 27' 9.948" S
23° 54' 56.972" E	29° 27' 15.670" S
23° 54' 58.075" E	29° 27' 20.468" S
23° 54' 59.540" E	29° 27' 25.842" S
23° 55' 0.790" E	29° 27' 29.309" S
23° 55' 1.546" E	29° 27' 33.060" S
23° 55' 2.228" E	29° 27' 35.628" S
23° 55' 3.523" E	29° 27' 37.547" S
23° 55' 5.827" E	29° 27' 40.056" S
23° 55' 10.835" E	29° 27' 44.327" S
23° 55' 16.983" E	29° 27' 49.437" S
23° 55' 11.479" E	29° 27' 51.806" S
23° 54' 6.643" E	29° 28' 19.701" S
23° 52' 19.682" E	29° 29' 5.696" S
23° 51' 35.443" E	29° 29' 52.774" S
23° 50' 48.940" E	29° 29' 10.248" S

C. LOCALITY MAP (show nearest town, scale not smaller than 1:250000 attached as Appendix 3).

A Locality map is attached in Appendix 3 and on figure 1 below.





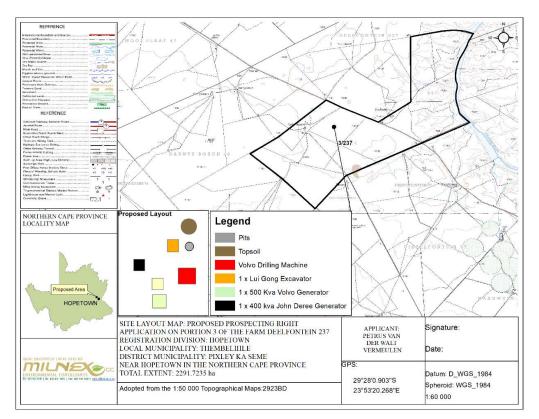


Figure 2: Site Plan Map

# D. DESCRIPTION OF THE SCOPE OF THE PROPOSED OVERALL ACTIVITY.

#### i) LISTED AND SPECIFIED ACTIVITIES

NAME OF ACTIVITY	Aerial extent of the Activity	LISTED ACTIVITY	APPLICABLE LISTING NOTICE	WASTE MANAGEMENT AUTHORISATION
<ul> <li>(E.g. For prospecting - drill site, site camp, ablution facility, accommodation, equipment storage, sample storage, site office, access route etcetc</li> <li>E.g. for mining,- excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etcetcetc.)</li> </ul>		(Mark with an <b>X</b> where applicable or affected).	(GNR 324, GNR 325 or GNR 326)	(Indicate whether an authorisation is required in terms of the Waste Management Act). (Mark with an X)
Prospecting near watercourse				
<ul> <li>Drilling         It is estimated that 200 boreholes shall be drilled by the appointed contractor. Percussion drilling methods will be used to drill boreholes at varying depths ranging from 90-150m with hole diameters of at least 150mm.     </li> <li>Pitting         50 pits: 3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth).     </li> <li>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 19: The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from:         <ul> <li>a watercourse;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Extent of the proposed portions are 2291.7235 Ha Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	GNR. 327, Listing Notice 1, Activity 19	
Prospecting Right without bulk sampling:				
<ul> <li>Drilling         It is estimated that 200 boreholes shall be drilled by the appointed contractor. Percussion drilling methods will be used to drill boreholes at varying depths ranging from 90-150m with hole diameters of at least 150mm.     </li> <li>Pitting         50 pits: 3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth).     </li> <li>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 20: "Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in erms of section 16 of the Mineral and     </li> </ul>	Extent of the proposed portions are 2291.7235 Ha Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	GNR. 327, Listing Notice 1, Activity 20	-

Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource[,]; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] (b) the primary processing of a mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing;				
Clearance of indigenous vegetation:				
<ul> <li>Drilling         It is estimated that 200 boreholes shall be drilled by the appointed contractor. Percussion drilling methods will be used to drill boreholes at varying depths ranging from 90-150m with hole diameters of at least 150mm.     </li> <li>Pitting         50 pits: 3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth).     </li> <li>Listing Notice 1: GNR 327, Activity 27:"The clearance of an area of 1 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares of indigenous vegetation."</li> </ul>	Extent of the proposed portions are 2291.7235 Ha Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	GNR. 327, Listing Notice 1, Activity 27	-
Clearance of indigenous vegetation:				
<ul> <li><u>Drilling</u>         It is estimated that 200 boreholes shall be drilled by the appointed contractor. Percussion drilling methods will be used to drill boreholes at varying depths ranging from 90-150m with hole diameters of at least 150mm.     </li> <li><u>Pitting</u>         50 pits: 3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth).     </li> <li>Listing Notice 3: GNR 324, Activity 12: "The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation. (g) Northern Cape (ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;"     </li> </ul>	Extent of the proposed portions are 2291.7235 Ha Concurrent backfilling will take place in order to rehabilitate.	X	GNR. 324, Listing Notice 3, Activity 12	

#### Listed activities

Description of the overall activity. (Indicate Mining Right, Mining Permit, Prospecting right, Bulk Sampling, Production Right, Exploration Right, Reconnaissance permit, Technical co-	1)	<b>Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 19:</b> "The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from: i) a watercourse;"
operation permit, Additional listed activity)	1)	Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 20: "Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource[,]; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] (b) the primary processing of a mineral resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating, crushing, screening or washing;
	2)	Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 27: "The clearance of an area of 1 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares of indigenous vegetation."
	3)	Listing Notice 3 (GNR 324), Activity 12: "The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation. (g) Northern Cape: (ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;
	Dia asso	specting right without bulk sampling for the prospecting of <b>Diamonds Alluvial (DA)</b> , <b>monds General (D), Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) and Diamonds (DIA)</b> including pociated infrastructure, structure and earthworks. Application of Prospecting right out bulk sampling.

# ii) DESCRIPTION OF THE ASSOCIATED STRUCTURES AND INFRASTRUCTURE RELATED TO THE DEVELOPMENT

(Describe Methodology or technology to be employed, and for a linear activity, a description of the route of the activity

**Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** has embarked on a process for applying for a Prospecting Right without bulk sampling for the prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) on Portion 3 of the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD. This portions is preferred due to the sites expected mineral resources, and because the farm is owned by the Deelfontein trust, of which the applicant is the trustee. **Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** requires a prospecting right without bulk sampling in terms of NEMA and the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act to prospect for minerals mentioned above within the Thembelihle Local Municipality, Northern Cape Province (refer to a locality map attached in **Appendix 3**).

#### Access road

Access will be obtained from existing gravel roads off the R3112 that traverses the area

#### Water Supply

This is a prospecting right application without bulk sampling. It is envisaged that small amounts of water will be utilized to be used as dust suppression & for the cooling of equipment

If Water uses under section 21 a-k of the NWA are triggered, a Water Use Licence Application (WULA) must be lodged with the department of Water & Sanitation (DWS).

#### Ablution

Chemical toilets shall be used, no french drains and pits shall be permitted.

#### Storage of dangerous goods

During the prospecting activities, limited quantities of diesel and fuel, oil and lubricants if any will be stored on site. These goods should be placed in a bunded area one and a half times the volume of the total amount of goods to be stored. Less than 30 cubic metres of dangerous good will be stored on site.

#### -List of equipment's & infrastructure

List of equipment

1 X 400 Kva John Deree Generator 1 x 500 Kva Volvo Generator 1 x 933 Lui Gong Excavators Volvo drilling machine

#### Prospecting activities and phases

Please find the Prospecting Work Programme attached as Appendix 8.

# iii) DESCRIPTION OF PLANNED NON-INVASIVE ACTIVITIES:

(These activities do not disturb the land where prospecting will take place e.g. aerial photography, desktop studies, aeromagnetic surveys, etc.).

#### Site Visit (Phase 1)

The applicant will appoint Pierre de Jager as geologist to conduct the site visit with him. It is foreseen that more than one site visit will be conducted. The purpose of the site visit shall be to familiarize the parties of the area including the topography and the general geology before invasive prospecting activities shall be commenced with.

During the site visit, the applicant shall assess the roads, the infrastructure that may be used and if it will be necessary to construct any infrastructure needed for the prospecting activities. From a site visit much more details shall be obtained about the process to be followed to properly conduct the prospecting activities than from near desktop studies.

Site visit shall assist the applicant to make a better assessment of the prospecting work to be done during the respective phases where the prospecting work shall be commenced with and what additional equipment may be required to properly conduct the prospecting activities.

The site visit shall also assist the applicant to assess prospecting information of earlier prospecting activities. During this process the applicant shall also review all documentation that has received in relation to the geology of the area.

A site visit will be done within 90 days after the prospecting right was executed.

#### **Desktop Studies (Phase 2)**

Desktops studies would be undertaken after the site visit has been done to determine the target areas including the identification of any infrastructure to be built and any potential problems that may need to be addressed during the prospecting activities.

Both these two phases will be Non-Invasive and restricted to a desktop study which will include literature survey, Interpretation of aerial photographs, satellite images and ground validation of targets.

During the desktop studies the applicant with the appointed geologist shall study all available geological information and historical data about the previous prospecting and mining activities.

During desktop studies, a preliminary analysis of the operating environment shall be obtained. The desktop studies may improve in project efficiency and reduced the cost by providing a clearer understanding of the challenges the prospecting activities may entail.

The desktop studies shall be finalized by the compilation and the analysis of pre-existing relevant data. The preliminary operating areas shall be identified for these studies. A working document shall be drafted by the geologist after the finalization of the desktop studies.

## Consolidation and interpretation of results data (Phase 5)

The project geologist, Pierre de Jager, shall monitor the program and consolidate and process the data and amend the program depending on the results received after each phase of prospecting. The DMR shall be updated of any amendments made. This shall be a continuous process throughout the prospecting work program.

Each physical phase of prospecting shall be followed by desktop studies involving interpretation and modeling of all data gathered. These studies will determine the manner in which the work programme is to be proceeded with in terms of the activity, quantity, resources, expenditure and duration.

A GIS data base will be constructed capturing all the exploration data. All data shall be consolidated and processed to determine the diamond bearing resource on the property.

# iv) DESCRIPTION OF PLANNED INVASIVE ACTIVITIES:

(These activities result in land disturbances e.g. sampling, drilling, bulk sampling, etc.)

# Drilling (Phase 3)

The applicant has appointed Pierre de Jager representative of the mineral consultants and as appointed geologist who will assist with the prospecting activities.

It is estimated that 200 boreholes shall be drilled by the appointed contractor. Percussion drilling methods will be used to drill boreholes at varying depths ranging from 90-150m with hole diameters of at least 150mm. The drilling programme shall be done in accordance with procedures and protocols drawn up by the appointed geologist. Drilling shall be carried out by using a Volvo drilling machine. The drill will be under constant observation to determine the depth estimates of the lithological contacts. Each sample shall be logged based upon macroscopic examination of the drill cuttings.

Drilling will commence on the areas that the geologist is of the opinion the geology may prove the presence of diamond bearing indicators. The holes will be drilled on a 100m by 100m grid on the target areas identified during phase 1 and phase 2.

The results shall be noted in a field note book. Observations in the field shall include grainsize, color, degree of roundness (quartzite and chert clasts) and end-of-hole lithology bedrock. These logs will later be summarized and the gravel deposit types will be assigned based upon their stratigraphic and sedimentological characteristics. All the drill holes positions will be surveyed and each borehole will be rehabilitated after completion of drilling.

It is estimated that the drilling will take approximately two years after the prospecting right has been executed and the EMP approved.

#### **Calculations**

According to the PWP the diameter of the borehole will be 150mm and 200 boreholes will be drilled. The disturbance of each borehole was calculated at 2m x 2m.

٠	$2m \times 2m = 4m^2$	(From mm to m)
٠	4m <sup>2</sup> x 200 boreholes = 800m <sup>2</sup>	(Total area disturbance for all boreholes)

٠	800m <sup>2</sup> / 10 000 = 0.08ha	(Disturbance from m <sup>2</sup> to ha)
٠	0.08ha / 2 years = 0.04ha	Disturbance per year (12 months)

The total vegetation clearance for 200 boreholes is 0.08ha for 24 months and 0.04 for 12 months.

#### Pitting (Phase 4)

Invasive prospecting pits may be dug, depending on the results obtained from the previous phases if deemed necessary by the appointed geologist.

These pits will be positioned as determined by the geologist and after the geologist has assessed information obtained from the earlier prospecting activities.

A trial pit / test pit or inspection pit investigation is a highly effective way of obtaining data on the sub surface soil and rock conditions which underlie a prospecting sight. It allows for the various soils and rock types to be locked, the soil to be sampled and a preliminary assessment to be made.

Pits shall be dug, locked, sampled and backfilled.

To dig the pits, the applicant shall make use of the systems of the appointed geologist.

The applicant shall at the end of the pitting process have locked the pits with the following information:

- A description of the soil and rock types from ground level to the base of the pits;
- Record of rock head depth and refusal depth, a list of where the samples will be taken, a record of where ground water seepage will be recorded;
- A general note of the geologist and conditions in the vicinity of the test pit.

#### Calculations

It is planned that 50 pits will be dug (it may be less depending on the results) at an extent of 3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth).

(50 pits / 24 months) x 12 months = 25 pits dug per year	
25 pits x (3m x 2m) / 10 000 = 0.015 Ha disturbed per year	Total area to be disturbed per year
50 pits x (3m x 2m) / 10 000 = 0.03 Ha disturbed	Total area disturbed for 24 months

Total disturbance for the difference phases:

Phase	Timeframe	Impact
Phase 3 - Drilling		Vegetation disturbance
24 months (months 7 -30)	1 <sup>st</sup> year: 12 months	0.04ha
	2 <sup>nd</sup> year: 12 months	0.04ha
Phase 4 - Pitting		Vegetation clearance
24 months (months 30 - 54)	3 <sup>rd</sup> year: 12 months	0.015ha
	4 <sup>th</sup> year: 12 months	0.015ha
Total	48 months	0.11ha

(i) **DESCRIPTION OF PRE-FEASIBILITY STUDIES** (Activities in this section includes but are not limited to: initial, geological modelling, resource determination, possible future funding models, etc.)

All data will be consolidated and processed to determine the diamond bearing resource on the property. This will be a continuous process throughout the prospecting work program.

# E. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

Title of legislation, policy or guideline:	Administering authority:	Promulgation Date:
National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended.	Department of Environmental Affairs	27 November 1998
Constitution of South Africa Act 108 of 1996	National	18 December 1996
The National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)	SAHRA	1999
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)	Department of Mineral Resources & Energy (DMRE)	2002
National Infrastructure Plan	National	
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004	Department of Environmental Affairs	7 June 2004
National Environmental Management Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	National & Provincial	1 July 2009
EIA regulations under NEMA	Department of Environmental Affairs	14 December 2014
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act,1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983)	Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries	1 June 1984
National Environmental Management Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004).	National and Provincial	11 September 2004
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998).	National	20 August 1998
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	Municipal	
Thembelihle Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	Municipal	
National Forest Act (Act 84 of 1998) (NFA)	National	30 October 1998
National Veld & Forest Fires Act (Act 101 of 1998)	National	27 November 1998

POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT			
Title of legislation, policy or guideline:	Reference where applied	How does this development comply with and respond to the legislation and policy context.	
		The Constitution is the supreme law of the Republic and all law and conduct must be consistent with the Constitution. The Chapter on the Bill of Rights contains a number of provisions, which are relevant to securing the protection of the environment. Section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996) states the following:	
		"Everyone has the right –	
		(a) to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and	
Constitution of South Africa Act 108 of 1996	Section 24	<ul> <li>(b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that –</li> <li>i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation;</li> </ul>	
		ii) promote conservation; and	
		iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development."	
		The Constitution therefore, compels government to give effect to the people's environmental right and places government under a legal duty to act as a responsible custodian of the countries environment. It compels government to pass legislation and use other measures to protect the environment, to prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure sustainable development.	
National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 as amended.	S24(1) of NEMA S28(1) of NEMA	NEMA provides for co-operative governance by establishing principles and procedures for decision-makers on matters affecting the environment. An important function of the Act is to serve as an enabling Act for the promulgation of legislation to effectively address integrated environmental management. Some of the principles in the Act are accountability; affordability; cradle to grave management; equity; integration; open information; polluter pays; subsidiary; waste avoidance and minimisation; co-operative governance; sustainable development; and environmental protection and justice.	
		The mandate for EIA lays with the National Environmental Management Act (107 of 1998) and the EIA Regulations No. 326, 327, 325, and 324 promulgated in terms of Section 24 of NEMA. The EIA Regulations determine that an Environmental Authorisation is required for certain listed activities, which might have a detrimental effect on the environment.	
EIA regulations as amended under NEMA	Listing notice 1 Listing notice 2 Listing Notice 3	The National Environmental Management Act107 of 1998 (NEMA), as amended, makes provision for the identification and assessment of activities that are potentially detrimental to the environment. These activities are detailed in Listing Notice 1 (as amended by GNR 327 of 7 April 2017), Listing Notice 2 (as amended by GNR325 of 7 April 2017) and Listing Notice 3 (as amended by GNR324 of 7 April 2017). Undertaking activities specified in the Listing Notices are only allowed once Environmental Authorisation has been obtained from the competent authority. Such Environmental Authorisation will only be considered once there has been compliance with the EIA Regulations, 2014. The Environmental Authorisation which may be granted subject to conditions.	

#### POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)	Section 10, 16, 22, 27 and 48	The Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act identifies the state as the official custodian of South Africa's Mineral and Petroleum Resources. Therefore, all activities relating to the reconnaissance, prospecting rights, mining rights, mining permits and retention permits are regulated by the State. One of the objectives of the Act is to give effect to section 24 of the Constitution by ensuring that the nation's mineral and petroleum resources are developed in an orderly and ecologically sustainable manner while promoting justifiable social and economic development.
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Regulations, 2014.	Regulations 3, 5, 10 and 14	MPRDA Regulations prescribe how an application for a permit or right must be lodged.
The National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)	Section 35 Section 38	The National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999, Section 35) protects South Africa's unique and non-renewable archaeological and palaeontological heritage sites. These sites may not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resources authority. Section 38 of the NHRA provides guidelines for Cultural Resources Management and proposed developments:
National Environmental Management Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)	Category A Category B Category C	Section 24S of NEMA deals with the management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits and provides that Residue stockpiles and residue deposits must be deposited and managed in accordance with the provisions of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008), on any site demarcated for that purpose in the environmental management plan or environmental management programme in question. The management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits must be done in accordance with any conditions set out and any identified measures in the environmental authorisation issued in terms of NEMA, an environmental management programme and a waste management licence issued in terms of NEMA (Regulation 3(2)). The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008) (NEM:WA) regulates waste management in all aspects and created a list of waste management activities that have, or are likely to have, a detrimental effect on the environment, which requires an impact assessment and licensing process. Activities listed in Category A require a Basic Assessment process, activities listed in Category C must comply with the relevant requirements or standards, in order for competent authorities to consider an application in terms of NEM:WA.
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act No. 10 of 2004	Chapter 4 Chapter 5	The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) (NEMBA) is part of a suite of legislation falling under NEMA. The Act provides for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant protection; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources; the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute; and for matters connected therewith (SANBI). Chapter 4 of NEMBA deals with threatened and protected ecosystems and species to ensure the maintenance of their ecological integrity, their survival in the wild, the utilisation of biodiversity is managed in an ecologically sustainable way and to regulate international trade in specimens of endangered species. Chapter 5 of NEMA deals with species and organisms posing potential threats to biodiversity. The purpose of this chapter is

		to prevent the introduction and spread of alien species and invasive species, also to manage, control and eradicate alien species and invasive species
National Environmental Management Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004).	Section 21	The object of this Act is to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the protection and enhancement of the quality of air in the Republic; the prevention of air pollution and ecological degradation; and securing ecologically sustainable development while promoting justifiable economic and social development. Regulations No. R248 (of 31 March 2010) promulgated in terms of Section 21(1) (a) of the National Environmental Management Act: Air Quality Act (39 of 2004) determine that an Atmospheric Emission License (AEL) is required for certain listed activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a detrimental effect on the environment. The Regulation also sets out the minimum emission standards for the listed activities. It is not envisaged that an Atmospheric Emission License will be required for the proposed development.
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998).	Section 21	Sustainability and equity are identified as central guiding principles in the protection, use, development, conservation, management and control of water resources. The intention of the Act is to promote the equitable access to water and the sustainable use of water, redress past racial and gender discrimination, and facilitate economic and social development. The Act provides the rights of access to basic water supply and sanitation, and environmentally, it provides for the protection of aquatic and associated ecosystems, the reduction and prevention of pollution and degradation of water resources. As this Act is founded on the principle that National Government has overall responsibility for and authority over water resource management, including the equitable allocation and beneficial use of water in the public interest, a person can only be entitled to use water if the use is permissible under the Act. Chapter 4 of the Act lays the basis for regulating water use.

National Forest Act (Act 84 of 1998) (NFA)	Regulation 7	The protection, sustainable management and use of forests and trees within South Africa are provided for under the National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998). Regulation 7 from the Act states the following: <b>Prohibition on destruction of trees in natural forests.</b> (1) No person may - (a) cut, disturb, damage or destroy any indigenous tree in a natural forest; or (b) possess, collect, remove, transport, export, purchase, sell, donate or in any other manner acquire or dispose of any tree, or any forest product derived from a tree contemplated in paragraph (a), except in terms of- (i) a licence issued under subsection (4) or section 23; or (ii) an exemption from the provisions of this subsection published by the Minister in the Gazette on the advice of the Council.
National Veld & Forest Fires Act (Act 101 of 1998)	Regulation 13 Chapter 5	The purpose of the Act is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires throughout the Republic and provides for a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. Regulations 13 provides the requirement for firebreaks. Chapter 5 places a duty on all owners to acquire equipment and have available personnel to fight fires.
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 85 of 1983)		The purpose of the Act is to provide for control over the utilization of the natural agricultural resources of the Republic in order to promote the conservation of the soil, the water sources and the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants; and for matters connected therewith. The objects of this Act are to provide for the conservation of the natural agricultural resources of the Republic by the maintenance of the production potential of land, by the combating and prevention of erosion and weakening or destruction of the water sources, and by the protection of the vegetation and the combating of weeds and invader plants.
National Infrastructure Plan		The National Government adopted a National Infrastructure Plan in 2012. With the plan they aim to transform the South African economic landscape while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs, and strengthening the delivery of basic services.         Government will over the three years from 2013/14 invest R827 billion in building and upgrading existing infrastructure.         These investments will improve access by South Africans to healthcare facilities, schools, water, sanitation, housing and electrification. On the other hand, investments in the construction of ports, roads, railway systems, electricity plants, hospitals, schools and dams will contribute to faster economic growth.         This mining activity will indirectly contribute to the growing of the South African economy by supplying SANRAL with material to build and upgrade road infrastructure.

District Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	The IDP and SDFs of the relevant municipalities was examined and relevant information was included in the EIA report.
Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP)	The IDP and SDFs of the relevant municipalities was examined and relevant information was included in the EIA report.
National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003	This Act provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes. It also seeks to provide for the sustainable utilization of protected areas and to promote participation of local communities in the management of protected areas.
National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 Of 2008) Regulations regarding the Planning & Management of Residue Stockpiles & Residue Deposits from a Prospecting, Mining, Exploration or Production Operation	The purpose of these Regulations is to regulate the planning and management of residue stockpiles and residue deposits from a prospecting, mining, exploration or production operation.
Hazardous Substances Act (No. 15 of 1979)	The object of the Act is inter alia to 'provide for the control of substances which may cause injury or ill health to, or death of, human beings by reason of their toxic, corrosive, irritant, strongly sensitising or flammable nature or the generation of pressure thereby in certain circumstances; for the control of electronic products; for the division of such substances or products into groups in relation to the degree of danger; for the prohibition and control of such substances.' In terms of the Act, substances are divided into schedules, based on their relative degree of toxicity, and the Act provides for the control of importation, manufacture, sale, use, operation, application, modification, disposal and dumping of substances in each schedule.
Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act (No. 70 of 1970)	This Act regulates the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture. The Directorate of Resource Conservation is responsible for the enforcement thereof. Investigations are done by the Provincial Department in support of the execution of the Act. The Act also deals with aspects associated with rezoning land.
Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993)	The Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993) (OHSA) provides a legislative framework for the provision of reasonably healthy and safe conditions in the workplace. It also places extensive legal duties on employees and users of machinery and makes major inroads on employers' and employees' common law rights. The OHSA is applicable and states that any person involved with construction, upgrades or developments for use at work or on any premises shall ensure as far as reasonably practicable that nothing about the manner in which it is installed, erected or constructed makes it unsafe or creates a risk to health when properly used

Mine Health and Safety Act (No. 29 of 1996)	<ul> <li>The Mine Health and Safety Act (No. 29 of 1996) (MHSA) aims to protect and promote the health and safety of employees and persons that may be affected by the activities at a mine and outlines both the rights and responsibilities of an employer, as well as the obligations of employees working thereat.</li> <li>The following principles are considered applicable to the Proposed Project and are detailed below: <ul> <li>The primary responsibility for ensuring a health and safe working environment in the mining site is placed on the mine owner. The Act sets out in detail the steps that employers must take to identify, assess records and control health and safety hazards in the mine;</li> <li>The right of workers to participate in health and safety decisions, the right to receive health and safety information, the right to training and the right to withdraw from the workplace in face of danger;</li> <li>The Act requires the establishment of institutions to promote a culture of health and safety and develop policy, legislation and regulations; and</li> <li>The responsibility for enforcing MHSA lies with the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate. The Inspectorate's powers are recast and include the power to impose administrative fines upon employers who contravene the MHSA.</li> </ul> </li> <li>The Act also contains innovative approaches to the investigation of accidents, diseases and other occurrences that threaten health and safety.</li> </ul>
Government Notice Regulation 704 of 1999	<ul> <li>GNR.704 of 1999 under the NWA provides regulations on the use of water for mining and related activities aimed at the protection of water resources (requirements for clean and dirty water separation). GNR.704 requires inter alia the following: <ul> <li>Separation of clean (unpolluted) water from dirty water;</li> <li>Collection and confinement of the water arising within any dirty area into a dirty water system;</li> <li>Design, construction, maintenance and operation of the clean water and dirty water systems so that it is not likely for either system to spill into the other more than once in 50 years;</li> <li>Design, construction, maintenance and operation of any dam that forms part of a dirty water system to have a minimum freeboard of 0.8m above full supply level, unless otherwise specified in terms of Chapter 12 of the Act; and</li> <li>Design, construction, and maintenance of all water systems in such a manner as to guarantee the serviceability of such conveyances for flows up to and including those arising as a result of the maximum flood with an average period of recurrence of once in 50 years.</li> </ul> </li> <li>GNR.704 also stipulates that no person in control of a mine or activity may: <ul> <li>Locate or place any residue deposit, dam, reservoir, together with any associated structure or any other facility within the 1:100 year flood line or within a horizontal distance of 100 m from any watercourse or estuary, borehole or well, excluding boreholes or wells drilled specifically to monitor the pollution of groundwater, or on water-logged ground, or on ground likely to become water-logged, undermined, unstable or cracked;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Use any area or locate any sanitary convenience, fuel depots, reservoir or depots for any substance which causes or is likely to cause pollution of
a water resource within the 1:50 year flood line of any watercourse or estuary.

#### F. NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITIES.

(Motivate the need and desirability of the proposed development including the need and desirability of the activity in the context of the preferred location).

Economic activity in modern-day South Africa has been centered on mining activities, their ancillary services and supplies. The country's stock exchange in Johannesburg was established in 1887, a decade after the first diamonds were discovered on the banks of the Orange River, and almost simultaneously with the gold rush on the world-famous Witwatersrand.

In many ways, South Africa's political, social and economic landscape has been dominated by mining, given that, for so many years, the sector has been the mainstay of the South African economy. Although gold, diamonds, platinum and coal are the most well-known among the minerals and metals mined, South Africa also hosts chrome, vanadium, titanium and a number of other lesser minerals.

In 2018 the mining sector contributed R351 billion to the South African gross domestic product (GDP). A total of 456,438 people were employed in the mining sector in 2018. Each person employed in the mining sector has up to nine indirect dependents. The mining sector has, for many years, attracted valuable foreign direct investment to South Africa. (Mineral Council, 2021)

Diamonds, arguably the ultimate luxury mineral, comprise an intricate lattice of carbon atoms, a crystalline structure that makes them harder than any other form in nature. This characteristic makes diamonds not only popular in jewellery, but also desirable in high-tech cutting, grinding and polishing tools (Chamber of Mines, South Africa, 12:2016).

According to the Chamber of Mines the country's diamond sector is far from reaching the end of its life even though diamond mining has been taking place in South Africa for almost a century and a half. The primary sources of all of South Africa's diamonds are kimberlites in ancient, vertically dipping volcanic pipes most of which were located in the vicinity of the city of Kimberley and which were initially amenable to open-cast.

Economic growth - South Africa's total reserves remain some of the world's most valuable, with an estimated worth of R20.3trillion. Overall, the country is estimated to have the world's fifth-largest mining sector in terms of GDP value.

With South Africa's economy built on gold and diamond mining, the sector is an important foreign exchange earner, with gold accounting for more than one-third of exports. In 2009, the country's diamond industry was the fourth largest in the world.

Mining is a cornerstone of the economy, making a significant contribution to economic activity, job creation and foreign exchange earnings. Mining and its related industries are critical to South Africa's socio-economic development.

## G. MOTIVATION FOR THE PREFERRED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE INCLUDING A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE.

NB!! – This section is about the determination of the specific site layout and the location of infrastructure and activities on site, having taken into consideration the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and the consideration of alternatives to the initially proposed site layout.

#### Location of the site

The property is located approximately 28km West of Hopetown in the Northern Cape Province.

The location of the site is preferred due to the possibility of shallow diamond. The property is also owned by the Deelfontein Trust of which Mr Petrus Van Der Walt is the trustee.

According to Figure 20 and Figure 21 the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21)

#### Preferred activity

The prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) is one of the preferred activity for the site. The possible shallow diamond deposits make the site ideal for prospecting. The mine will provide significantly more job opportunities than what is providing currently.

According to Figure 20 and Figure 21 the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21)

#### **Technology alternatives**

In terms of the technologies proposed, these have been chosen based on the long term success of their prospecting history. The prospecting activities proposed in the Prospecting Works Programme (**Appendix 8**) is dependent on the preceding phase as previously discussed, therefore no alternatives are indicated, but rather a phased approach of trusted prospecting techniques.

# H. A FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS FOLLOWED TO REACH THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT WITHIN THE APPROVED SITE, INCLUDING:

#### i) DETAILS OF THE DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT ALTERNATIVES CONSIDERED;

#### <u>Consideration of alternatives</u>

The DEAT 2006 guidelines on 'assessment of alternatives and impacts' proposes the consideration of four types of alternatives namely, the no-go, site, activity, and technology alternatives. It is however, important to note that the regulation and guidelines specifically state that only 'feasible' and 'reasonable' alternatives should be explored. It also recognizes that the consideration of alternatives is an iterative process of feedback between the developer, the EAP and Interested and affected parties, which in some instances culminates in a single preferred project proposal. The following sections explore each type of alternative in relation to the proposed activity.

#### Location alternatives

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. Also, it is expected that the applied for minerals have been deposited on this farm and therefore the applicant would like to commence with their prospecting activities. The property is also owned by the Deelfontein Trust of which Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen is a trustee.

According to Figure 20 and Figure 21 the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21). The property also borders the Orange River on its Eastern boundaries.

#### Land capability

The proposed development falls within Land in Class VII (7). (refer to Land capability map on figure 6 and attached as Appendix 5).

According to an article on the Grain SA website by Garry Paterson from ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water on the Grain SA website, agriculture rests on three pillars where natural resources are concerned. These are the soil (comprising the growth medium for the plant), the climate conditions (which supply the plant with sufficient water and heat) and the terrain (enabling the crop to be physically planted, to grow and to be harvested sustainably).

The concept of land capability combines the three natural resource elements or factors listed above (soil, climate and terrain) and uses set parameters to determine a specific class for a given area. The basis of the land capability assessment in South Africa is the well-known Land Type Survey, which is a country-wide inventory of natural resources, i.e. soil pattern, macroclimate and terrain type, carried out between 1972 and 2002 by the ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water.

Each unique land type is allocated to one of eight land capability classes. These classes are based on the original USDA land capability system, whereby Classes I and II comprise areas with little or no limitations to rainfed agriculture, Classes III and IV comprise those areas which are still considered arable, but with moderate to severe restrictions. Classes V to VIII comprise non-arable land with increasingly serious restrictions, either in terms of restricted soil, steep terrain, rockiness and/or an unfavourable climatic regime. (Garry Paterson, ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water, November 2014.)

# <u>Activity alternatives</u>

The environmental impact assessment process also needs to consider if the development of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite). prospecting would be the most appropriate land use for the particular site.

Prospecting of other commodities – from the surface and desktop assessment there are no indications that there are other commodities to be mined on the site except Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite).

#### • Design and layout alternatives

The purpose of prospecting it to investigate an area of land to identifying an actual or probable mineral deposit. The location of activities will be determined based on the location of diamondiferous gravel.

All the infrastructure will be temporary and/or mobile.

# Operational alternatives

Due to the nature of the prospecting activities, no permanent services in terms of water supply, electricity, or sewerage services are required.

The objective of the prospecting work programme is to target all minerals in question seams available with a view of increasing the geological confidence factor to assess its bulk sampling potential.

#### No-go alternative

This alternative considers the option of 'do nothing' and maintaining the status quo. The description provided in section H of this report could be considered the baseline conditions (status quo) to persist should the no-go alternative be preferred. Should the proposed activity not proceed, the site will remain unchanged.

#### • <u>Technology Alternatives</u>

In terms of the technologies proposed, these have been chosen based on the long term success of their prospecting history. The prospecting activities proposed in the Prospecting Works Programme (**Appendix 8**) is dependent on the preceding phase as previously discussed, therefore no alternatives are indicated, but rather a phased approach of trusted prospecting techniques.

The preferred technology for the proposed mining activity, will be to drill boreholes, dig pits, lock, sample and backfill them. Please find the Prospecting Work Programme attached as **Appendix 8**.

#### Reverse Circulation Drilling (RC drilling)

#### Drill Structure

RC drilling is usually a large piece of apparatus, that requires a lot of space, not just for the rig itself, but the supporting vehicles and the pit for collecting waste runoff.

The drill cutting is transferred to the surface inside drill rods, which are linked together to create a 'drill string'. Drill bits attached to the end of the hammer are made from tungsten-steel, and are usually around 13-20cm in diameter. These also have metal nodules attached at the end to allow cutting through particularly tough rock. Most RC drilling uses a dual-tube drill rods, with one tube inside another. The tubes inside overlap and provide a path for drilled rock from the ground to the surface. Inner tubes can be sealed together, meaning that the RC drill can sample up to very large depths, often around 500m.

Another type of RC drilling is 'centre sample' drilling. This is a modern variation, in which a central hammer, with a hollow centre, allows the sample to immediately enter the drill pipe, without the need to travel past the hammer (AZOMining, 2012)

#### Sample Extraction

The samples produced from RC drilling are dry chips of the drilled rock. To create the sample, the hammer acts like a pneumatic piston and pushes a tungsten-steel drill bit on to the rock, breaking it up. Before the drill bit hits the rock, it is dried out using an air compressor, so that the rock chips are dry at the surface.

Water is often used down the hole to cool the drill bit and reduce dust, as well as assisting with the transportation of sample bits to the surface. Air is blown down the drill rods to create a pressure difference, allowing the sample chips and water to rise through the inner tube. The sample then reaches a bell at ground level, which transports the sample to a cyclone where it dries out and is deposited into sacks (AZOMining, 2012).

#### **Applications**

RC drilling is a technique used in most stages of mine development.

As it is cheaper than diamond core drilling, it is often used in first stage exploration mining to delineate a potentially extractable ore body. It is also preferable to RAB or air-core drilling when trying to reach great depths, but RC drilling is slower and more expensive than either of these two methods.

RC drilling is also consistently used during in-pit grade control and the development stage of an ore body (AZOMining, 2012).

Advantages	Disadvantages			
Direct drilling cost reductions in the range of 25% to 40%.	Less geological information from sample.			
Faster completion of drill programs with quicker delivery of	Holes can deviate (Spiral Stabiliser Subs keep holes			
results.	straighter)			
Reduced man-hours at the drill with decreased exposure to	Diamond drill can usually drill to greater depth although			
potential accidents.	depths up to 800m have been achieved with.			
Reduced contractor activity in the mine reduces mine support				
burden.				
Indirect cost reductions gained from a simplified sampling				
process.				

#### Pros & Cons of the alternative RC drilling

#### **Diamond Core Drilling**

Diamond drilling allows the removal of solid cylinders of rock (core) from deep within the earth.

#### Drill Structure

Diamond core drilling is so called because it uses a 'diamond bit'. This drill bit is composed of group of small, industrial grade diamonds set into a metallic, soft matrix. As the ground is drilled, this matrix will wear away and expose more diamonds.

This is then attached to a drill rod, which is around 10 foot in length, and then more sections of pipe can be attached to the top of this, so a greater depth can be drilled. The depth that is drilled to is estimated by the number of rods attached to the top of the drill rod.

Inside the drill rod, a core tube is attached to a cable via a latching mechanism. The core tube is lifted to the surface using the cable, so the solid core can be removed.

There are two primary types of diamond drilling-rotary drilling and wineline drilling. Rotary drilling is used primarily for bore hole drilling, whereas wineline drilling is used for solid core sampling.

There a five standard tube sizes associated with wire line drilling. These are as follows:

- AQ (Hole diameter: 48mm)
- BQ (60mm)
- NQ (75.5mm)
- HQ (96mm)
- PQ (122.6mm)

The drill size used depends on the desired core diameter and the desired depth of drilling, and the wider the diameter of the tube, the more power that is required to drive the drilling (AZOMining, 2012).

#### Core Extraction

To extract core, the drill rod rotates the diamond bit, spinning it into the ground. As the drill bit bores through the rock, solid rock is taken into the circular opening at the end of the bit, into the core tube, and can then be recovered at the surface as it piles up. Once the core is recovered at the surface it is broken along natural fractures and stored in core trays to await analysis. A standard core tray can hold around 10 feet of core.

For optimum core extraction, the driller must listen to the drill to evaluate subsurface conditions. To keep drilling efficient, the rotation speed, pressure and water circulation must be strictly monitored.

Sometimes when drilling in highly fractured zones, overheating can occur due to a stuck bit. This issue is usually counteracted by the injection of mud or sawdust to plug fractures in the rock.

#### Application

Diamond core finds its primary function in the exploration mining sector. It is usually one of the last stages of exploration, during which the orebody is delineated in three dimensions. This will determine whether the prospect is economically viable. Using a diamond drill rig, long vertical sections of core can be extracted from deep in the ground, which can then be analysed at the surface by geologists.

The core can then be analysed using a wide range of petrologic, structural and mineralogical techniques to determine whether the potential mining site is economically viable.

Extracted core is first washed and macroscopic features are logged by an exploration geologist. The core is then cut and representative samples are sent for chemical analysis (AZOMining, 2012).

Advantages	Disadvantages	
Lighty accurate outting	Drill bits are often not very big and they are mostly able to	
Highly accurate cutting	cut through only stone, rock and cement.	
A reduced risk of inadvertently causing structural damage	There is a powerful kick back from the machinery so caution	
	needs to be applied when using diamond core drilling.	
	While dust will not accumulate in large quantities some dust	
Less debris is produced	is likely to go into the drilling machine which can have an	
	effect on its functioning and effectiveness.	
Suitable for just about any working environment		
Very little noise and no dust		

#### Pros & Cons of the alternative Diamond Core Drilling

Equipment is lightweight and portable	
Can be done remotely which limits the safety hazards.	
Drill to great depth	

#### Percussion rotary air blast (RAB)

Percussion rotary air blast drilling is a commonly used drilling technique used for exploratory drilling i.e. when minerals are being searched for. Percussion rotary air blast drilling is also often used for water bore drilling and blasthole drilling of mines.

This drilling technique makes use of pneumatic pressure to drive the steel drill bit into the ground in order to create a hole. It is a hammer like process that is easily able to penetrate rock in order to find mineral and ore deposits. The drill bits used are hollow. The debris which results from the **drilling process** shoots out of the earth and lands next to the machine. The unwanted material will land on the surface, next to the machine, by the use of air compression that is forced into the mine shaft. This is method of drilling is not always the best method to use when it comes to exploratory drilling as the materials to be sampled can be damaged when the materials are blasted from the earth. The percussion rotary air blast drilling procedure can usually be completed within a day.

**Percussion rotary air blast drilling** is the perfect method to be used when the exploratory drilling needs to be done on hard material such as rock. The percussion rotary air blast drilling method can penetrate up to 25 metres. If a mining company simply wants to have a small sample of the product which they are mining, then this method is simple and cost effective to be use. When there is a rock layer sitting on top of the soil which needs to be analysed for mineral presence, percussion rotary air blast drilling can be used to break away the top layer of rock so that the underneath soil can be explored.

Advantages	Disadvantages	
Can be completed very quickly and easily through almost every different type of rock, this is the biggest advantage to percussion rotary air blast drilling.	The biggest disadvantages to percussion rotary air blast drilling are that for the effective use of the machinery, an experienced operator needs to be employed and while the machine can break through almost all types of rock, it cannot break through rock which is reinforced by steel.	
Simple to operate and maintain	Slow, compared with other methds	
Suitable for a wide variety of rock	Equipment can be heavy	
Operation is possible above and below the water-table	Problems can occur with unstable rock formations.	
Possible to drill to considerable depths	Water is needed for dry holes to help remove currinsgs.	

Pros & Cons of the alternative Percussion rotary air blast (RAB):

According to the PWP (Appendix 8) the Percussion drilling methods will be used.

#### ii) DETAILS OF THE PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PROCESS FOLLOWED

Describe the process undertaken to consult interested and affected parties including public meetings and one on one consultation. NB the affected parties must be specifically consulted regardless of whether or not they attended public meetings. (Information to be provided to affected parties must include sufficient detail of the intended operation to enable them to assess what impact the activities will have on them or on the use of their land.

The Public Participation Process (PPP) must follow Regulation 41 of NEMA EIA Regulations; thus, the process needs to be transparent. However, due to the Protection of Personal Information Act (POPI Act) which commenced on 01 July 2021, Stakeholders, Landowners, surrounding landowners and registered I&AP' addresses, contact details and comments will not be included in any draft report to be circulated. All this information will form part of the final report to be submitted to the Competent Authority only.

Should you be identified as a Stakeholder, Landowner, Surrounding landowner and you do not wish to receive any further communique from Milnex CC regarding the application in question, you may request in writing that your details be removed from the Milnex CC database for this application.

#### **PUBLIC PARTICIPATION PLAN**

Below is a plan Milnex CC used for this application in order to ensure that reasonable opportunity was provided for public participation and that all administrative actions were reasonable for the Basic Assessment Report (Draft BAR & EMPR)

CONSULTATION METHOD	DESCRIPTION			
	Registered letters will be sent to Stakeholders, Landowner, Surrounding			
	Landowners and registered I&Aps.			
Written Notice	Postal services will be used and hands will be sanitised while touching each letters			
	Where applicable and email addresses are available, notification letter will be sent			
	via emails			
	Draft Basic Assessment Report (Draft BAR & EMPR) can be accessed using the following			
	manner:			
	<ul> <li>A dropbox link which will be made available during circulation</li> </ul>			
Availability of the	Sent via emails			
documents	• Pick-up at the Milnex office in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-			
	Reneke, between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Thursdays and between 7:30AM			
	and 4PM on Fridays will be made available. Prior arrangement should be made so			
	that the documents may be packaged and sanitised for pick up			
Landowner consultation	Consultation with the landowner for their consent on the application (Consent letter)			
	Notice boards will be fixed at a place conspicuous to and accessible by the public			
Fixing of Notice Boards	at the boundary.			
	Notices will be sanitised after placement			
Placing of an advertisement	Advertisement will be placed in one local newspaper			
	A preferred method of a meeting is online to avoid contact and any spread of the			
	Covid-19 virus.			
	Online/virtually methods used include Zoom or Microsoft Teams. This Meetings will			
Meetings	be conducted upon request. This will be conducted virtually via Zoom or Microsoft			
-	Teams			
	• If there is a need, the meetings can be arranged for people less than 50 people on			
	site (Covid regulations to be observed and no one will be allowed without a mask)			
I				

Public Participation Plan for the application was as follows:

#### ADVERTISEMENT AND NOTICES

An advertisement was placed in English in the local newspaper (**NoordkaapBulletin**) notifying the public of the EIA process and requesting Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) to register with, and submit their comments to Milnex CC. I&APs were given the opportunity to raise comments within 30 days of the advertisement. (see **Appendix 6**)

#### SITE NOTICES

Site notices was placed (as anticipated on the coordinates below) on site in English to inform surrounding communities and immediately adjacent landowners of the proposed development. I&APs will be given the opportunity to raise comments. Photographic evidence of the site notices will be included in **Appendix 6**. Below are the coordinates where the site notices were placed.

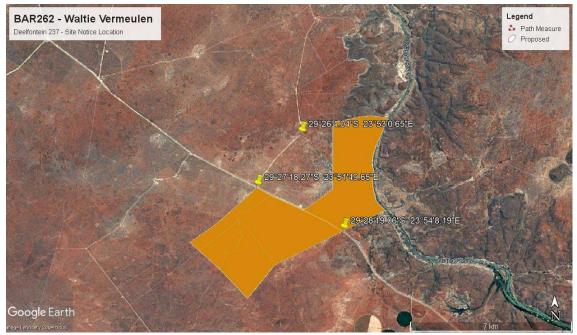


Figure 3: Site notices

# Direct notification and circulation of Basic Assessment Report to identified I&AP, stakeholder, landowners, surrounding landowners, and occupiers.

Identified I&APs, including key Stakeholders representing various sectors, Landowners, Surrounding landowners and Occupiers are directly informed of the proposed development and the availability of the **Basic Assessment Report** via registered post or email on **13 May 2022** and were requested to submit comments by **13 June 2022**. A copy of the report is also available at the Milnex offices in Schweizer-Reneke, 4 Botha Street, Schweizer-Reneke and Potchefstroom (Waterberry Street, Waterberry Square, 1st floor, Office 5B, Potchefstroom), between 7:30AM and 5PM, Monday to Friday. For a complete list of stakeholder details and for proof of registered post see **Appendix 6**. The consultees included:

Table 1: List of Stakeholders, Landowners, & surrounding landowners

Stakeholders			
Department of Agriculture, Environmental Affairs, Land Reform and Rural Development (DAELRRD)			
Department of Co-operative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA)			
Department of Economic Development and Tourism			
Department of Roads and Public Works (DRPW)			
Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison (DTSL)			
Department of Social Development (DSD)			
Northern Cape Tourism Authority			
Northern Cape Heritage Resources Authority (NCHRA)			
Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE)			
Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS)			
Northern Cape Economic Development, Trade and Investment Promotion Agency (NCEDA)			
Commission on Restitution of Land Rights.			
Landowner			
Deelfontein Trust			
Surrounding landowners			
Petrus Christiaan van Wyk			
Administrateur in Boedel van wyle Louis Albert Bertrand			

Klipdale Trust		
Zelda Leonie Swiegers		
Charles Peter Mathewson		
JD Ferreira Familie Trust		
Leopold Ignatius Ferreira		
Jurie Badenhorst Trust		
Namakwa Boerdery No 5		
Sonet Engela Bosman		
P Louw Trust		
Charlize Helene Louw & Pieter Louw		
Other Stakeholders		
Agricultural Extension Services		
Marc Caplan		

It is expected from I&APs to provide their inputs and comments within 30 days after receipt of the notification or Basic Assessment Report. When the comment period ends, all comments received will be included in the final Basic Assessment Report & EMP Report.

#### **Public Meeting**

Please note that the Stakeholders & Interested and Affected Parties (I&APs) were informed about the proposed project with the use of press advertisement, registered letters and site notices. It was mentioned that due to COVID-19, any meetings will be conducted virtually via Zoom or Microsoft Teams upon request by the I&APs.

No meeting was requested by stakeholders and/or I&APs as of yet.

#### Issues Raised by Interested and Affected Parties

Comments received during this period are attached as comment & response report as well as populated in the table of summary of issues raised (See **Appendix 6** for comments and response form).

The Public Participation Process (PPP) must follow Regulation 41 of NEMA EIA Regulations; thus, the process needs to be transparent. However, due to the Protection of Personal Information Act (POPI Act) which commenced on 01 July 2021, Stakeholders, Landowners, surrounding landowners and registered I&AP' addresses, contact details and comments will not be included in any draft report to be circulated. All this information will form part of the final report to be submitted to the Competent Authority only.

Should you be identified as a Stakeholder, Landowner, Surrounding landowner and you do not wish to receive any further communique from Milnex CC regarding the application in question, you may request in writing that your details be removed from the Milnex CC database for this application.

#### iii) SUMMARY OF ISSUES RAISED BY I&APS

(Complete the table summarising comments and issues raised, and reaction to those responses)

Interested and Affected Parties List the names of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted.		Issues raised	EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant	Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issue and or response where
Organisation	Contact person			incorporated
Landowner				
Deelfontein 3/237	Deelfontein Trust Anne Rhoda Vermeulen Petrus van der Walt Vermeulen			
Surrounding Landowners				
Farm 0/270	Petrus Christiaan van Wyk			
Summerhill 0(RE)/203	Administrateur in Boedel van wyle Louis Albert Bertrand			
Eksdale 3/204	Klipdale Trust Zelda Leonie Swiegers			
Eksdale 5(RE)/204	Charles Peter Mathewson			
Farm 3&8/77	JD Ferreira Familie Trust Leopold Ignatius Ferreira			
Dolf's Doorns 4/76	Jurie Badenhorst Trust			
Darnys Bosch 1(RE)/46	Namakwa Boerdery No 5 Sonet Engela Bosman			
Darnys Bosch 2(RE)/46	P Louw Trust			

	Charlize Helene Louw & Pieter		
	Louw		
The Municipality in which juriedi	ction the development is located		
Thembelihle Local Municipality	Municipal Manager:		
memberine Local municipanty	Mr Michael Jack		
Municipal councilor of the ward i	n which the site is located		
Thembelihle Local Municipality Ward 2 Councillor	To whom it may concern		
Organs of state having jurisdiction	on		
Department of Agriculture,			
Environmental Affairs, Land	Head of Department:		
Reform and Rural Development	Mr Lerato wa Modise		
(DAELRRD)			
Department of Co-operative			
Governance, Human	Andile Mbolekwa		
Settlements and Traditional			
Affairs (COGHSTA)			
Department of Economic Development and Tourism	Head of Department:		
(DEDT)	Mr T Mabija		
Department of Roads and	Head of Department:		
Public Works (DRPW)	Mr Kholekile Nogwili		
Department of Transport,	Head of Department		
Safety and Liaison (DTSL)	To whom it may concern		
Department of Social	Head of Department		
Development (DSD)	To whom it may concern		
Northern Cape Tourism	Communications Officers:		
Authority	Mr Tebogo Velembo (Marketing		
	and Communications Officer)		
	Senior Management: Mrs Rose Kelebogile (Senior		
Northern Cape Heritage	Admin) and		
Resources Authority (NCHRA)	Mr Ratha Andrew Timothy		
	(Manager		

	Regional Manager: Mr Ndlelenhle Zindela Secretary: Ms Ntombi Mayekiso Jeanette Moabi		
Department of Mineral Resources and Energy (DMRE)	Machalla Ramaboea		

Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS)	Mr Khutjo Kwena Sekwaila (WUL Manager)		
Northern Cape Economic	Communications Officer:		
Development, Trade and Investment Promotion Agency	Mr Alungile Ganuganu (Project		
(NCEDA)	Officer)		
	Chief Director: Ms. M. Du Toit		
Commission on Restitution of			
Land Rights.	Pabalelo Mokale Phumla Thabatha		
	Natashia romain		

Other–			
Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality	Municipal Manager: Mr Rodney Pieterse		
WESSA	Graham Avery		
Agricultural Extension Services (AES)	Marc Caplan		

## iv) THE ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES ASSOCIATED WITH THE SITES

### Baseline Environment

The baseline environment is described with specific reference to geotechnical conditions, ecological habitat and landscape features, Soil, land capability and agricultural potential, climate and the visual landscape.

## DEA Screening Report

According to the DEA Screening Report the Environmental Sensitivity of the proposed area is as follows:

Wind and Solar developments with an approved Environmental Authorisation or applications under consideration within 30 km of the proposed area according to the DEA Screening Tool.

No	EIA Reference No	Classification	Status of application	Distance from proposed area (km)
1	12/12/20/2682	Solar PV	Approved	0
2	14/12/16/3/3/2/283	Solar PV	Approved	12.6
3	14/12/16/3/3/1/825	Solar PV	Approved	15.9

### According to the DEA Screening Tool the proposed development area Environmental sensitivity

The following summary of the development site environmental sensitivities is identified. Only the highest environmental sensitivity is indicated. The footprint environmental sensitivities for the proposed development footprint as identified, are indicative only and must be verified on site by a suitably qualified person before the specialist assessments identified below can be confirmed.

Theme	Very High	High	Medium	Low
	sensitivity	sensitivity	sensitivity	sensitivity

Page 6 of 17

Disclaimer applies 13/09/2021

Agriculture Theme		X		
Animal Species Theme			X	
Aquatic Biodiversity Theme	X			
Archaeological and Cultural		X		
Heritage Theme				
Civil Aviation Theme				Х
Defence Theme				X
Paleontology Theme		X		
Plant Species Theme				X
Terrestrial Biodiversity Theme	X			

### Type of environment affected by the proposed activity.

(its current geographical, physical, biological, socio- economic, and cultural character).

### **Geology and Soils**

The oldest and predominant rock type occurring on all farms concerned are the Archaean (2.7 Ga) lithologies of the Ventersdorp Supergroup. The oldest of the Ventersdorp lithologies, a small exposure of which outcrops on the farm Hereford 202, includes the silicified volcaniclastic rocks of the Hereford formation, which is believed to be the local equivalent of the Makwassie Formation. Unconformably overlying this unit are the conglomerates, sandstones and subordinate dark shales of the Bothaville Formation. The Allanridge Formation, the youngest of the Ventersdorp Supergroup rocks, outcrops over a large portion of the review area, particularly along the Orange river, and comprises largely dark-green, amygdaloidal andesite.

Intrusive into this suite of largely andesitic lavas and subordinate, interbedded sedimentary rocks are granite intrusives of the Keimoes suite. This acidic, instrusive phase is related to the Namagualand Metamorphic province.

Group glacial deposits of the Karoo Supergroup. These comprise largely tillites, diamictites and varved shales. Outcrops of these lower Karoo lithologies are very limited in extent and are largely preserved along the western margin of the Orange River, with small outcrops exposed in adjacent pre-Karoo valleys to the east of the Orange River. These lacial lithologies ae conformably overlain by the shales of the Prince Albert and Whitehill Formations of the Ecca Group. Similarly to the Dwyka Group, these exposures are very limited in exent, with only exposure in this area occurring on the farm Eskdale 204.

Overlying most of the farms are Quaternary deposits of alluvium, windblown sand and calcrete. Deposits of calcrete are characteristic of this comparatively flat region, which has a low rainfall pattern. It is present as nodules in the superficial cover of soil and sand, or as a more or less continuous layer just below, which may crop out here and there. Much of the sand cover is dominated by windblown Recent Red Hutton Sands.

Surface drainage in the area is affected by the Orange River, which occurs on the western margin of all farms concerned. This has resulted in the formation of alluvium and sheetwash deposits, which are largely restricted to areas immediately adjacent to the river. Although no gravel deposits are visible at surface, the Orange River is often associated with alluvial gravel deposits that occur either immediately adjacent to the river or as higher level terrace deposits. These gravels, if present, may be covered by alluvium and windblown sand.

#### Ecological habitat and landscape features

The result obtained by plotting the coordinates are as follow:

The proposed area falls within vegetation units: Kimberley Thornveld, Northern Upper Karoo, Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation & Vaalbos Rocky Schrubland, see the description below:

#### Kimberley Thornveld

**Distribution** North-West, Free State and Northern Cape Provinces: Most of the Kimberley, Hartswater, Bloemhof and Hoopstad Districts as well as substantial parts of the Warrenton, Christiana, Taung, Boshof and to some extent the Barkly West Districts. Also includes pediment areas in the Herbert and Jacobsdal Districts. Altitude 1 050–1 400 m (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Vegetation & Landscape Features Plains often slightly irregular with well-developed tree layer with Acacia erioloba, A. tortilis, A. karroo and Boscia albitrunca and well-developed shrub layer with occasional dense stands of Tarchonanthus camphoratus and A. mellifera. Grass layer open with much uncovered soil (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Geology & Soils** Andesitic lavas of the Allanridge Formation in the north and west and fine-grained sediments of the Karoo Supergroup in the south and east. Deep (0.6–1.2 m) sandy to loamy soils of the Hutton soil form (Ae and Ah land types) on slightly undulating sandy plains (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Climate** Summer and autumn rainfall and very dry winters. MAP from about 300 mm in the southwest to about 500 mm in the northeast. Frost frequent in winter. Mean monthly maximum and minimum temperatures for Kimberley 37.5°C and –4.1°C for January and July, respectively. Corresponding values for Vaalharts-Agr 37.4°C and –3.9°C, respectively. See also climate diagram for SVk 4 Kimberley Thornveld (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Important Taxa Tall Tree: Acacia erioloba (d). Small Trees: Acacia karroo (d), A. mellifera subsp. detinens (d), A. tortilis subsp. hete¬racantha (d), Rhus lancea. Tall Shrubs: Tarchonanthus camphoratus (d), Diospyros pallens, Ehretia rigida subsp. rigida, Euclea crispa subsp. ovata, Grewia flava, Lycium arenicola, L. hirsutum, Rhus tridactyla. Low Shrubs: Acacia hebeclada subsp. hebeclada (d), Anthospermum rigidum subsp. pumilum, Helichrysum zeyheri, Hermannia comosa, Lycium pilifolium,

Melolobium microphyllum, Pavonia burchellii, Peliostomum leuco¬rrhizum, Plinthus sericeus, Wahlenbergia nodosa. Succulent Shrubs: Aloe hereroensis var. hereroensis, Lycium cinereum. Graminoids: Eragrostis lehmanniana (d), Aristida canescens, A. congesta, A. mollissima subsp. argentea, Cymbopogon pospischilii, Digitaria argyro¬grapta, D. eriantha subsp. eriantha, Enneapogon cenchroides, E. scoparius, Eragrostis rigidior, Heteropogon contortus, Themeda triandra. Herbs: Barleria macro¬stegia, Dicoma schinzii, Harpagophytum procumbens subsp. procumbens, Helichrysum cerastioides, Hermbstaedtia odorata, Hibiscus marlothianus, Jamesbrittenia aurantiaca, Lippia scaberrima, Osteospermum muricatum, Vahlia capensis subsp. vulgaris. Succulent Herbs: Aloe grandidentata, Piaranthus decipiens (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Biogeographically Important Taxa** (GWGriqualand West endemic, Kalahari endemic) Low Shrub: Blepharis marginata. Succulent Shrub: Euphorbia bergii. Graminoid: Panicum kalaharense. Herbs: Helichrysum Arenicola, Neuradopsis bechua¬nensis. Succulent Herbs: Lithops aucampiae subsp. aucamp¬iaeGW, Tridentea marientalensis subsp. marientalensis (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 16%. Only 2% statutorily conserved in Vaalbos National Park as well as in Sandveld, Bloemhof Dam and S.A. Lombard Nature Reserves. Some 18% already transformed, mostly by cultivation. Erosion is very low. Area is mostly used for cattle farming or game ranching. Overgrazing leads to encroachment of Acacia mellifera subsp. detinens (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

#### Northern Upper Karoo

**Distribution** Northern Cape and Free State Provinces: Northern regions of the Upper Karoo plateau from Prieska, Vosburg and Carnarvon in the west to Philipstown, Petrusville and Petrusburg in the east. Bordered in the north by Niekerkshoop, Douglas and Petrusburg and in the south by Carnarvon, Pampoenpoort and De Aar. A few patches occur in Griqualand West. Altitude varies mostly from 1 000–1 500 m (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Vegetation & Landscape Features Shrubland dominated by dwarf karoo shrubs, grasses and Acacia mellifera subsp. detinens and some other low trees (especially on sandy soils in the northern parts and vicinity of the Orange River). Flat to gently sloping, with isolated hills of Upper Karoo Hardeveld in the south and Vaalbos Rocky Shrubland in the northeast and with many interspersed pans (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Geology & Soils** Shales of the Volksrust Formation and to a lesser extent the Prince Albert Formation (both of the Ecca Group) as well as Dwyka Group diamictites form the underlying geology. Jurassic Karoo Dolerite sills and sheets support this vegetation complex in places. Wide stretches of land are covered by superficial deposits including calcretes of the Kalahari Group. Soils are variable from shallow to deep, red-yellow, apedal, freely drained soils to very shallow Glenrosa and Mispah forms. Mainly Ae, Ag and Fc land types (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Climate** Rainfall peaks in autumn (March). MAP ranges from about 190 mm in the west to 400 mm in the northeast. Mean maximum and minimum monthly temperatures for Britstown are 37.9°C and –3.6°C for January and July, respectively. Corresponding values are 37.1°C and –4.8°C for De Aar and 39.0°C and –2.3°C for Kareekloof (northwest of Strydenburg). See also climate diagram for NKu 3 Northern Upper Karoo (Figure 7.2) (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Important Taxa Small Trees: Acacia mellifera subsp. detinens, Boscia albitrunca. Tall Shrubs: Lycium cinereum (d), L. horridum, L. oxycarpum, L. schizocalyx, Rhigozum trichotomum. Low Shrubs: Chrysocoma ciliata (d), Gnidia polycephala (d), Pentzia calcarea (d), P. globosa (d), P. incana (d), P. spinescens (d), Rosenia humilis (d), Amphiglossa triffora, Aptosimum marlothii, A. spinescens, Asparagus glaucus, Barleria rigida, Berkheya annectens, Eriocephalus ericoides subsp. ericoides, E. glandulosus, E. spinescens, Euryops asparagoides. Felicia muricata, Helichrysum lucilioides, Hermannia spinosa, Leucas capensis, Limeum aethiopicum, Melolobium candicans, Microloma armatum, Osteospermum leptolobum, O. spinescens, Pegolettia retrofracta, Pentzia lanata, Phyllanthus maderaspatensis, Plinthus karooicus, Pteronia glauca, P. sordida, Selago geniculata, S. saxatilis, Tetragonia arbuscula, Zygophyllum lichtensteinianum. Succulent Shrubs: Hertia pallens, Salsola calluna, S. glabrescens, S. rabieana, S. tuberculata, Zygophyllum flexuosum. Semiparasitic Shrub: Thesium hystrix (d), Herbs: Chamaesyce inaequilatera, Convolvulus sagittatus, Dicoma capensis, Gazania krebsiana, Hermannia comosa, Indigofera alternans, Lessertia pauciflora, Radyera urens, Sesamum capense, Sutera pinnatifida, Tribulus terrestris, Vahlia capensis. Succulent Herb: Psilocaulon coriarium. Geophytic Herb: Moraea pallida.Graminoids: Aristida adscensionis (d), A. congesta (d), A. diffusa (d), Enneapogon desvauxii (d), Eragrostis lehmanniana (d), E. obtusa (d), E. truncata (d), Sporobolus fimbriatus (d), Stipagrostis obtusa (d), Eragrostis bicolor, E. porosa, Fingerhuthia africana, Heteropogon contortus, Stipagrostis ciliata, Themeda triandra, Tragus berteronianus, T. koelerioides, T. racemosus (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Biogeographically Important Taxa Herb (western distribution limit): *Convolvulus boedeckerianus*. Tall Shrub (southern limit of distribution): *Gymnosporia szyszylowiczii* subsp. *Namibiensis* (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Endemic Taxa** Succulent Shrubs: *Lithops hookeri, Stomatium pluridens*. Low Shrubs: *Atriplex spongiosa, Galenia exigua*. Herb: *Manulea deserticola* (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 21%. None conserved in statutory conservation areas. About 4% has been cleared for cultivation (the highest proportion of any type in the Nama-Karoo) or irreversibly transformed by building of dams (Houwater, Kalkfontein and Smart Syndicate Dams). Areas of human settlements are increasing in the northeastern part of this vegetation type (Hoffman et al. 1999). Erosion is moderate (46.2%), very low (32%) and low (20%). *Prosopis glandulosa*, regarded as one of the 12 agriculturally most important invasive alien plants in South Africa, is widely distributed in this vegetation type (Hoffman et al. 1999). *Prosopis* occurs in generally isolated patches, with densities ranging from very scattered to medium (associated with the lower Vaal River drainage system and the confluence with the Orange River) to localised closed woodland on the western border of the unit with Bushmanland Basin Shrubland (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Remark** This Karoo unit is found on floristic and ecological gradients between the Nama-Karoo, arid Kalahari savanna and arid highveld grasslands (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

#### Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation

**Distribution** Free State and Northern Cape Provinces: Broad alluvia of the Orange River, lower Caledon as well as lower stretches of the Vaal, Riet and Modder Rivers as far as Groblershoop. These river stretches are surrounded by vegetation units of broad transitional regions between the dry facies of the Savanna and Grassland and northern regions of the Nama-Karoo Biome. Altitude ranging from 1 000–1 500 m (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Vegetation & Landscape Features** Flat alluvial terraces supporting complex of riparian thickets (gallery forests) dominated by native *Acacia karroo* and *Diospyros lycioides*, flooded grasslands, reed beds and ephemeral herblands populating mainly sand banks within the river and on its banks (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Geology, Soil & Hydrology Recent alluvial deposits underlain mostly by Karoo Supergroup sediments and tillites, supporting soils typical of la group land types. Subject to flooding, especially in summer (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Climate** Bimodal (equinoctial) climate with a major peak in March and with a lesser peak in November–December. The overall MAP is 325 mm (range 230–600 mm for Prieska and Wepener, respectively). MAT for the entire area averages 17°C (range 19.3–15.4°C for Prieska and Aliwal North, respectively). See also climate diagram for AZa 4 Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation (Figure 13.2) (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Important Taxa** Riparian thickets Small Trees: Acacia karroo (d), Celtis africana (d), Salix mucronata subsp. mucronata (d). Tall Shrubs: Diospyros lycioides (d), Melianthus comosus (d), Rhus pyroides. Low Shrubs: Asparagus setaceus, A. suaveolens. Woody Climber: Clematis brachiata. Succulent Shrubs: Lycium arenicola, L. hirsutum. Herb: Rubia cordifolia. Flooded grasslands & herblands Graminoid: Melica decumbens (d). Herbs: Cineraria dregeana, C. lobata (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Conservation** Vulnerable. Target 31%. Only about 3% statutorily conserved in Tussen Die Riviere, Gariep Dam and Oviston Nature Reserves. More than 20% transformed for cultivation (vegetables, grapes) and building of dams. Exotic woody species such as *Salix babylonica, Eucalyptus camaldulensis, E. sideroxylon, Prosopis* and *Populus* species have become common dominants in patches of heavily disturbed alluvial vegetation (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

#### Vaalbos Rocky Schrubland

**Distribution** Northern Cape and Free State Provinces: Extends along solitary hills and scattered ridges east of the confluence of the Orange and Vaal Rivers, mainly in the Kimberley and Herbert Districts and west of a line bounded by the western Free State towns of Luckhoff, Petrusburg, Dealesville, Bultfontein and Hertzogville. Altitude 1 000–1 400 m (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Vegetation & Landscape Features Slopes and elevated hills and ridges within plains of mainly SVk 4 Kimberley Thornveld, also in the vicinity of NKu 3 Northern Upper Karoo. Evergreen shrub communities dominated by *Tarchonanthus camphoratus*, *Olea europaea* subsp. *africana*, *Euclea crispa*, *Diospyros lycioides*, *Rhus burchellii* and *Buddleja saligna*. Sheltered, cool sites include trees such as *R. lancea*, *Celtis africana* and *Ziziphus mucronata*. On the footslopes of the dolerite hills, where calcreterich soils occur, shrubs and small trees of *Acacia tortilis* and *Z. mucronata* can be dominant (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Geology & Soils** A highly fragmented area on Ecca and Dwyka Group sediments and Karoo dolerites as well as on Ventersdorp Supergroup lavas (Allanridge Formation). Extensive dolerite sills which form ridges, and plateaus and slopes of koppies and small escarpments mark the erosion terraces. These dolerite sills cover alternating layers of mudstone and sandstone of sedimentary origin. The Ib land type is typical of these rock- and boulder-covered slopes. Prominent soil forms are the stony Mispah and gravel-rich Glenrosa forms derived from Jurassic dolerite, calcrete-rich soils cover the lowlands (Kimberley and Plooysburg forms) (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Climate** Summer and autumn rainfall with very dry winters. MAP about 250–450 mm. Frost frequent in winter, especially on bottomlands. Mean monthly maximum and minimum temperatures for Douglas 39.7°C and -4.6°C for January and July, respectively. See also climate diagram for SVk 5 Vaalbos Rocky Shrubland (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

Important Taxa Small Trees: Boscia albitrunca, Cussonia paniculata, Rhus lancea. Tall Shrubs: Euclea crispa subsp. crispa (d), Olea europaea subsp. africana (d), Tarchonanthus camphoratus (d), Ziziphus mucronata (d), Buddleja saligna, Cadaba aphylla, Diospyros austro-africana, D. lycioides subsp. lycioides, Ehretia rigida subsp. rigida, Gymnosporia polyacantha, Rhigozum obovatum, Rhus burchellii. Low Shrubs: Asparagus suaveolens, Hermannia comosa, Lantana rugosa, Lycium pilifolium, Pentzia globosa, Rhus ciliata. Succulent Shrubs: Cotyledon orbiculata var. orbiculata, Crassula nudicaulis, Kalanchoe paniculata, Lycium cinereum. Graminoids: Aristida adscensionis, A. congesta, Digitaria eriantha subsp. eriantha, Elionurus muticus, Enneapogon scoparius, Eragrostis lehmanniana, E. obtusa, Eustachys paspaloides, Fingerhuthia africana, Heteropogon contortus, Hyparrhenia hirta, Stipagrostis uniplumis, Themeda triandra. Herbs: Chascanum pinnatifidum, Harpagophytum procumbens subsp. procumbens, Hibiscus pusillus. Geophytic Herbs: Albuca setosa, Cheilanthes eckloniana, Haemanthus humilis subsp. humilis, Pellaea calomelanos. Succulent Herbs: Aloe grandidentata, Stapelia grandiflora (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 16%. Less than 2% statutorily conserved in the Vaalbos National Park. Only about 2% already transformed (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

**Remarks** Although similar topography and geology to that of koppies in the broad surrounds of Bloemfontein (Gh 4 Besemkaree Koppies Shrubland and Gh 7 Winburg Grassy Shrubland) in the Grassland Biome, the vegetation of this unit differs considerably in species composition through the occurrence of more arid elements (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

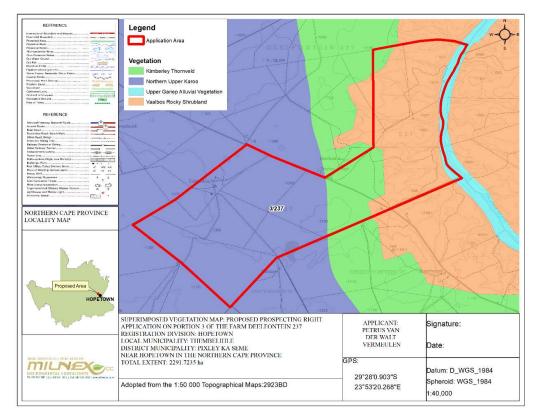


Figure 4: Vegetation types associated with the study site

According to the DEA Screening report the Plant Species theme sensitivity of the proposed area falls in Low sensitivity. Please see **Appendix 7** for the colour map.

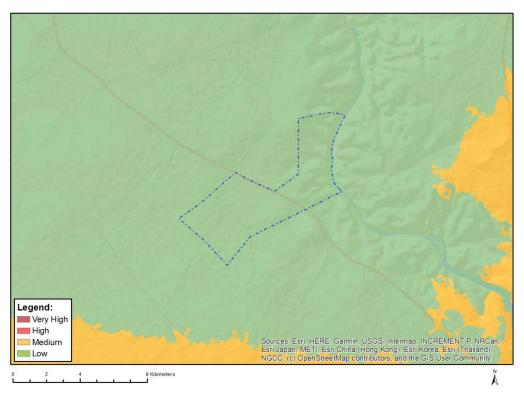


Figure 5: Plant Species Combined Sensitivity

According to the Terrestrial Biodiversity & Wetland Impact Assessment Report (Appendix 12), the below table represents dominant plant species observed on the study site.

Plant species list				
	Trees and	l Shrubs		
Scientific Name	Scientific Name Common Name		Invader category (NEMBA 2020)	
Amphiglossa triflora	Yellowthorn daisy	IUCN 3.1 redlist		
Asparagus burchellii	Wild asparagus	Least concern, endemic		
Asparagus suaveolens	Wild asparagus	Least concern		
PBoscia albitrunca	Sheperd's tree	Least concern		
Diospyros lycioides	Bushveld Bluebush	Least concern		
Hermannia spp	Doll's rose	Least concern		
Lasiosiphon polycephalus	Bessembossie	Least concern		
Lycium spp	Box thorns	Least concern		
Melolobium canescens	Heuningbossie	Least concern		
Peliostomum leucorrhizum	Veld violet	Least concern		
Pentzia incana	African sheepbush	Least concern		
Rhigozum trichotomum	Three thorn	Least concern		
Searsia lancea	Karree	Least concern		
Senegalia mellifera	Black thorn	Least concern		
*Solanum mauritianum	Bugweed	Exotic, declared invader	1b	
Tarchonanthus camphoratus	Camphor bush	Least concern		
PVachelia erioloba	Camel thorn	Least concern		
<sup>P</sup> Vachellia haematoxylon	Grey Camel Thorn	Least concern		
Vachelia karoo	Sweet thorn tree	Least concern		
Ziziphus mucronata	Buffalo-thorn	Least concern		
Ziziphus zeyheriana	Dwarf Buffalo-thorn	Least concern		

Graminoids				
Aristida congesta	Spreading Three-awn	Least concern		
Asparagus burchellii	Wild asparagus	Least concern, endemic		
Cenchrus ciliaris	Foxtail Buffalo grass	Least concern		
Cynodon dactylon	Couch Grass	Least concern		
Enneapogon cenchroides	Furgrass	Least concern		
Eragrostis spp	Lovegrass	Least concern		
Fingerhuthia africana	Thimble grass	Least concern		
Heteropogon contortus	Spear grass	Least concern		
Hyparrhenia hitra	Thatching grass	Least concern		
Panicum coloratum	Small buffalo grass	Least concern		
Pogonarthria squarrosa	Herringbone grass	Least concern		
Setaria verticillata	Hooked bristlegrass	Least concern		
Stipagrostis ciliata	Bushman grass	Least concern		
Stipagrostis obtusa	Small bushman grass	Least concern		
	Her	bs		
Aptosimum lineare		Least concern		
Aptosimum spinescens	Kankerbossie	Least concern		
Barleria macrostegia	Tongklapper	Least concern		
	Geopl	hytes		
Boophone disticha	Tumble weed	Least concern		
	Forbs and S			
#Agave americana	Century plant	Naturalised Invader	3 (Western cape)	
PAloe claviflora	Kraal aloe	IUCN 3.1 redlist		
*Bidens pilosa	Blackjack	Exotic		
*Datura stramonium	Downy Thorn Apple	Exotic, declared invader	1b	
#Erigeron bonariensis	Asthmaweed	Naturalised Invader weed		
*Opuntia ficus-indica	Sweet prickly pear	Exotic, declared invader	1b	
#Schkuria pinnata	Dwarf Mexican marigold	Naturalised exotic		
*Xanthium strumarium	Large Cocklebur	Exotic, declared invader	1b	

30% of Aloe claviflora and Boophone disticha plants should be relocated in areas to be disturbed as they are provincially protected.

Three protected tree species were recorded namely: *Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia erioloba* and *Vachellia haematoxylon*. If any of these trees are to be removed a protected tree license will have to be obtained.

See the full report under Appendix 12.

### Agricultural / land capability

According to an article on the Grain SA website by Garry Paterson from ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water on the Grain SA website, agriculture rests on three pillars where natural resources are concerned. These are the soil (comprising the growth medium for the plant), the climate conditions (which supply the plant with sufficient water and heat) and the terrain (enabling the crop to be physically planted, to grow and to be harvested sustainably).

The concept of land capability combines the three natural resource elements or factors listed above (soil, climate and terrain) and uses set parameters to determine a specific class for a given area. The basis of the land capability assessment in South Africa is the well-known Land Type Survey, which is a country-wide inventory of natural resources, i.e. soil pattern, macroclimate and terrain type, carried out between 1972 and 2002 by the ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water.

Each unique land type is allocated to one of eight land capability classes. These classes are based on the original USDA land capability system, whereby Classes I and II comprise areas with little or no limitations to rainfed agriculture, Classes III and IV comprise those areas which are still considered arable, but with moderate to severe restrictions. Classes V to VIII comprise non-arable land with increasingly serious restrictions, either in terms of restricted soil, steep terrain, rockiness and/or an unfavourable climatic regime. (Garry Paterson, ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water, November 2014.)

The proposed area falls within Land in Class VII (7). (refer to Land capability map on figure 6 and attached as Appendix 5).

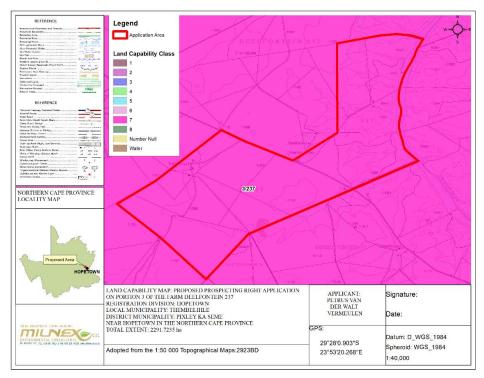
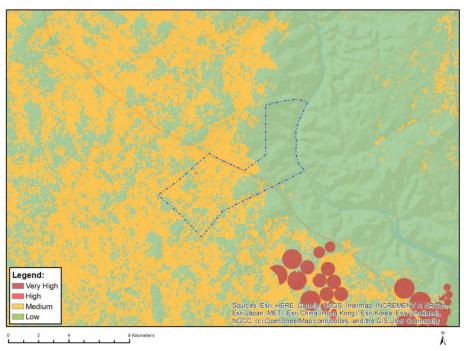


Figure 6: Land capability

According to the DEA Screening Report the Agriculture theme sensitivity of the proposed area falls mostly within low to medium sensitivity, however there is one small area that fall withing high sensitivity.



Please see **Appendix 7** for the colour map.

Figure 7: Agriculture Combined Sensitivity

## Threatened Ecosystems

Ecosystem threat status outlines the degree to which ecosystems are still intact or alternatively losing vital aspects of their structure, function and composition, on which their ability to provide ecosystem services ultimately depends (Driver et al. 2011). Datasets have been developed by SANBI (2016) in order to outline threatened ecosystems, with the primary objective of limiting the rate of ecosystem extinctions. Four established categories group these ecosystems namely: Critically Endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), Vulnerable (VU) and Protected.

According to Figure 8, the area does not fall within a threatened ecosystem

### **Protected Areas**

Formally protected areas are protected either by national or provincial legislation. Based on the SANBI (2010) Protected Areas Map (**Figure 8**), the proposed area does not fall within a formally protected area.

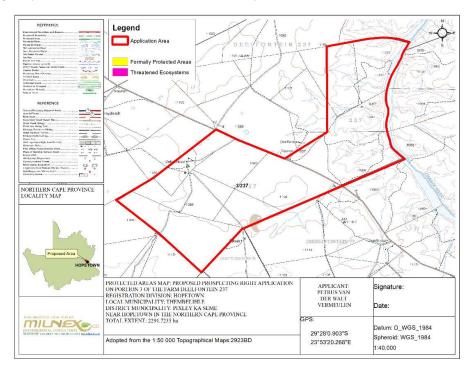


Figure 8: Threatened Ecosystems and Formally Protected Area.

## Critical Biodiversity Area

Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) are terrestrial and aquatic areas of high biodiversity value that need to be conserved and maintained in a natural or near-natural state to ensure the continued existence and functioning of species and ecosystems and the delivery of ecosystem services (MTPA, 2014). According to the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) (Act no. 107 of 1998) certain activities have strict guidelines or are prohibited within CBAs and ESAs. Refer to the listed activities under the NEMA: Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations of 2014 (GNR 982) as promulgated in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA) [as amended] for a comprehensive breakdown. The following terms are used to categorise the various land used types according to their biodiversity and environmental importance:

- Critical Biodiversity Area One (CBA1);
- Critical Biodiversity Area Two (CBA2);
- Ecological Support Area (ESA);

- Other Natural Areas (ONA); and
- Protected Area (PA).

Based on the desktop information, sections of the study site overlap with CBA1, CBA2 and ESA. These areas were mostly covered with natural vegetation and were flagged in the screening report as areas possessing very high terrestrial biodiversity sensitivity. The depression wetlands are classed as ESA and the south-western section of the study site is classed as Other Natural Areas. According to a matrix of recommended land use zones and associated activities in relation to the CBA map categories (DENC, 2008), prospecting is not permitted, and actively discouraged in CBA 1 areas. In CBA 2, ESA areas, prospecting is restricted to compulsory, site specific conditions and controls. When these conditions are unavoidable, prospecting is usually not permitted.

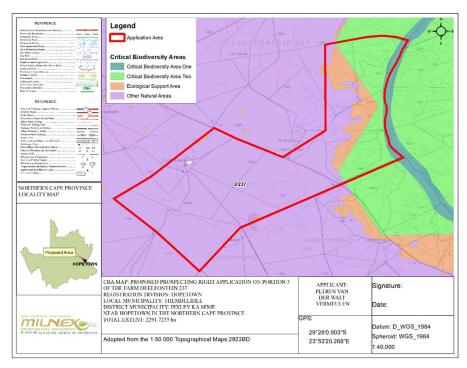


Figure 9: Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) associated with the study site.

According to the DEA Screening Report most of the proposed area falls partly within a Very High Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity, the other potion as depicated falls within a low sensitivity Please see **Appendix 7** for the colour map.

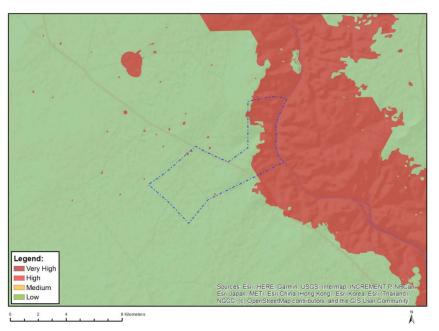


Figure 10: Terrestrial Biodiversity Combined Sensitivity

According to the DEA Screening Report the proposed area falls mostly within low Aquatic Biodiversity theme sensitivity and to a very small extent within a Very High along the Orange-river. Please see **Appendix 7** for the colour map.

The study site falls within the D33H Quaternary Catchment and forms part of the Upper Orange Water Management Area (WMA) (DWS, 2016). The Upper Orange WMA covers a total catchment area of 102 840 km<sup>2</sup>, with its major rivers being the Modder, Riet, Caledon and the Orange. The Orange River is situated on the north-eastern border of the study site, which is classed as Largely Modified (CLASS D).

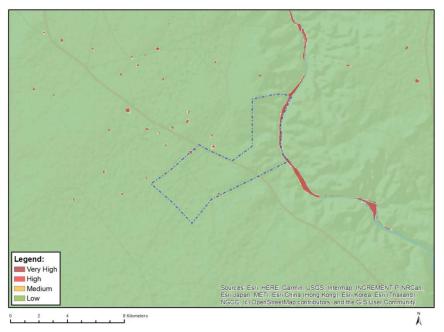


Figure 11: Aquatic Biodiversity Combined Sensitivity

Map of relative Animal Species theme sensitivity according to the DEA Screening Tool, which illustrates the Animal Species theme sensitivity is mostly low, with some areas that fall within a low sensitivity. Please see **Appendix 7** for the colour map.

A post-screening site visit was therefore conducted to determine the accuracy of the generated information, and if the studies recommended should be conducted. After the site visit it was concluded the the animal species theme is classified as a high sensitivity.

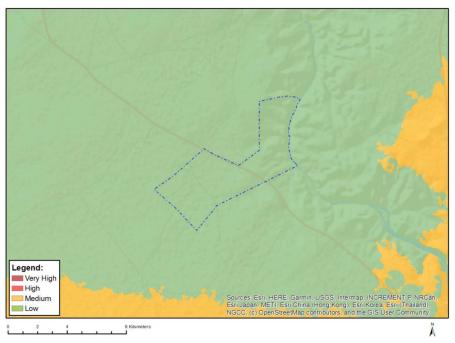


Figure 12: Animal Species theme sensitivity

The table below lists the mammal species possibly occurring on the proposed site according to the Animal Demography Unit (2019) alongside the designated statuses of those species in the South African Red list of Mammals (2012) and the Threatened or Protected Species (ToPS) List (NEMBA, 10 of 2004). Several species potentially occurring on site are protected under NEMBA (See species in bold).

The DFFE screening tool report did not flag any SCC that may potentially occur on site. Most of the mammals listed below were observed on site and have a high likelihood of occurrence within the study area due to the presence and abundance of suitable habitat. Most of the listed mammals are dependent on savannah woodlands and open grasslands for grazing. Evidence of occurrence was noted in the form of spoors, droppings, burrows, bones and carcasses.

Family	Scientific Name	Common Name	Red List Category	ToPS
Bovidae	Aepyceros melampus	Impala	Least Concern	
Bovidae	Raphicerus campestris	Steenbok	Least Concern (2016)	
Bovidae	Tragelaphus strepsiceros	Greater Kudu	Least Concern (2016)	
Canidae	Canis mesomelas	Black-backed Jackal	Least Concern (2016)	
Cercopithecidae	Chlorocebus pygerythrus	Vervet Monkey	Least Concern (2016)	
Felidae	Caracal caracal	Caracal	Least Concern (2016)	
Felidae	Felis nigripes	Black-footed Cat	Vulnerable (2016)	Protected
Felidae	Felis silvestris	Wildcat	Least Concern (2016)	

Felidae	Leptailurus serval	Serval	Near Threatened (2016)	Protected
Herpestidae	Cynictis penicillata	Yellow Mongoose	Least Concern (2016)	
Herpestidae	Suricata suricatta	Meerkat	Least Concern (2016)	
Herpestidae	Mungos mungo	Banded Mongoose	Least Concern (2016)	
Hyaenidae	Proteles cristata	Aardwolf	Least Concern (2016)	
Mustelidae	Mellivora capensis	Honey Badger	Least Concern (2016)	Protected
Mustelidae	Aonyx capensis	African clawless otter	Near Threatened (2016)	
Orycteropodidae	Orycteropus afer	Aardvark	Least Concern (2016)	
Sciuridae	Xerus inauris	South African Ground Squirrel	Least Concern	
Suidae	Phacochoerus africanus	Common Warthog	Least Concern (2016)	
Hysticidae	Hystrix africaeaustralis	Cape Porcupine	Least Concern (2016)	
Viverridae	Civettictis civetta	African Civet	Least Concern (2016)	
Viverridae	Genetta genetta	Common Genet	Least Concern (2016)	

See the full report under Appendix 12.

## **Biodiversity Priority Areas for Mining**

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline was developed in 2013 for the purpose of mainstreaming biodiversity management practices into the mining sector (DEA, DMR, Chamber of Mines, SAMBF & SANBI 2013). This Guideline provides explicit direction in terms of where mining-related impacts are legally prohibited, where biodiversity priority areas may present high risks for mining projects, and where biodiversity may limit the potential for mining. The Guideline distinguishes between four categories of biodiversity priority areas in relation to their importance from a biodiversity and ecosystem service perspective as well as the implications for mining in these areas (**Table 2**).

Table: Four categories of	f biodiversity priority	areas in relation to the	ir biodiversity importance	and implications for mining.
Tuble: Tour bulogened o	i bloarvorony priority		in bloarvoroity importante	and implications for mining.

Category	Biodiversity Priority Areas	Risks for Mining	Implications for Mining
A. Legally Protected	<ul> <li>Protected areas (including National Parks, Nature Reserves, World Heritage Sites, Protected Environments, Nature Reserves)</li> <li>Areas declared under Section 49 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)</li> </ul>	Mining Prohibited	Mining projects cannot commence as mining is legally prohibited. Although mining is prohibited in Protected Areas, it may be allowed in Protected Environments if both the Minister of Mineral Resources and Minister of Environmental Affairs approve it. In cases where mining activities were conducted lawfully in protected areas before Section 48 of the Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003) came into effect, the Minister of Environmental Affairs may, after consulting with the Minister of Mineral Resources, allow such mining activities to continue, subject to prescribed conditions that reduce environmental impacts.
B. Highest Biodiversity Importance	<ul> <li>Critically endangered and endangered ecosystems</li> <li>Critical Biodiversity Areas (or equivalent areas) from</li> </ul>	Highest Risk for Mining	Environmental screening, environmental impact assessment (EIA) and their associated biodiversity specialist studies should focus on confirming the presence and significance of these biodiversity features, and to provide site-specific basis on which to

	<ul> <li>provincial spatial biodiversity plans</li> <li>River and wetland Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (FEPAs) and a 1km buffer around these FEPAs</li> <li>Ramsar Sites</li> </ul>		<ul> <li>apply the mitigation hierarchy to inform regulatory decision-making for mining, water use licences, and environmental authorisations.</li> <li>If they are confirmed, the likelihood of a fatal flaw for new mining projects is very high because of the significance of the biodiversity features in these areas and the associated ecosystem services. These areas are viewed as necessary to ensure protection of biodiversity, environmental sustainability, and human well-being.</li> <li>An EIA should include the strategic assessment of optimum, sustainable land use for an area and will determine the significance of the impact on</li> </ul>
			biodiversity. This assessment should fully consider the environmental sensitivity of the area, the overall environmental and socio-economic costs and benefits of mining, as well as the potential strategic importance of the minerals to the country.
			Authorisations may well not be granted. If granted, the authorisation may set limits on allowed activities and impacts and may specify biodiversity offsets that would be written into licence agreements and/or authorisations.
C. High Biodiversity Importance	<ul> <li>Protected area buffers (including buffers around National Parks, World Heritage Sites* and Nature Reserves)</li> <li>Transfrontier Conservation Areas (remaining areas outside of formally proclaimed protected areas)</li> <li>Other identified priorities from provincial spatial biodiversity plans</li> <li>High water yield areas</li> <li>Coastal Protection Zone</li> <li>Estuarine functional zone *Note that the status of buffer areas of World Heritage Sites is subject to a current intra- governmental process</li> </ul>	High Risk for Mining	These areas are important for conserving biodiversity, for supporting or buffering other biodiversity priority areas, and for maintaining important ecosystem services for communities or the country. An EIA should include an assessment of optimum, sustainable land use for an area and will determine the significance of the impact on biodiversity. Mining options may be limited in these areas, and limitations for mining projects are possible. Authorisations may set limits and specify biodiversity offsets that would be written into licence agreements and/or authorisations.
D. Moderate Biodiversity Importance	<ul> <li>Ecological support areas</li> <li>Vulnerable ecosystems</li> <li>Focus areas for protected area expansion (land-based and offshore protection)</li> </ul>	Moderate Risk for Mining	These areas are of moderate biodiversity value. EIAs and their associated specialist studies should focus on confirming the presence and significance of these biodiversity features, identifying features (e.g. threatened (land-based and offshore protection) species) not included in the existing datasets, and on

providing site-specific information to guide the application of the mitigation hierarchy.
Authorisations may set limits and specify biodiversity offsets that would be written into licence agreements and/or authorisations.

Based on Figure 13, the proposed area overlaps with non of the above categories.

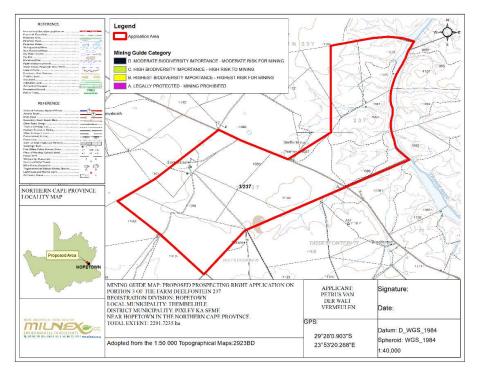


Figure 13: Biodiversity priority areas, in accordance with the Mining of Biodiversity Guidelines, associated with the study site.

### Wetland Areas

In terms of Section 1 of the National Water Act (No. 36 of 1998) (NWA), wetlands are legally defined as: "land which is transitional between terrestrial and aquatic systems where the water table is usually at or near the surface, or the land is periodically covered with shallow water, and which land in normal circumstances supports or would support vegetation typically adapted to life in saturated soil" (NWA 1998).

Wetlands are defined by the presence of unique soils and vegetation that do not occur in terrestrial and purely aquatic environments (Edwards *et al.* 2018). Wetland soils are referred to as hydric soils that develop under anaerobic conditions (condition where oxygen is virtually absent from the soil). Wetlands are also typically characterized by relatively large and dense stands of plants sticking out of shallow water or wet soil. Plants adapted to such waterlogged conditions are referred to as hydrophytes. Wetlands are distinct from true aquatic ecosystems like river ecosystems, which are characterized by fast flowing water within channels, and lake ecosystems, that are flooded to great depth; both of which are not primarily characterized by the occurrence of hydric soils and hydrophytes.

A wide variety of wetland types are present in South Africa, and can be classified into six broad types, namely floodplain wetlands, unchannelled valley bottom wetlands, channelled valley bottom wetlands, seeps, depressions and wetland flats. Owing to the large variations in climate and topography across South Africa, vegetation and habitat associated with these

wetland types vary tremendously from subtropical reed beds and tall swamp forests to arid salt pans, which all support unique and varied animal life.

Figure 14 illustrates all wetland types associated with the study site. According to the map below there are 2 small Depressions located on the more Western bounds of the area and 2 Unchannelled valley - bottom wetlands located near the Southern border of the property. The wetland vegetation on site are the Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Group 3, the Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Group 5 & the Upper Nama Karoo (Figure 15).

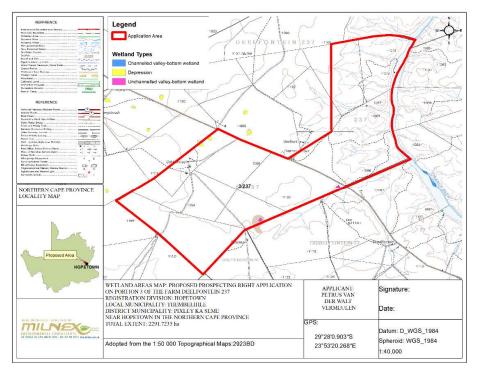
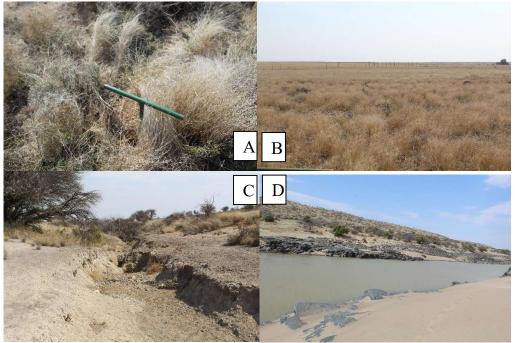


Figure 14: Wetland types located within or near the study site.

The wetland assessment was conducted during the late dry season. A hand-held auger and a GPS phone were used to log all information in the field. Based on the development type, the risks radius of the development on the wetland systems were deemed to be within 100m. Therefore, the field survey focused on the wetlands that were potentially most at risk.

From the desktop assessment, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. These are Depressions, Unchannelled Valley Bottoms and a Channelled Valley Bottom wetland. A site visit was conducted to confirm the desktop findings which are discussed below.



Wetlands assessed on site. A: Grass Depression. B: Grass Depression. C: Eroding drainage channel. D: Orange River floodplain

Numerous Depressions outside the development areas, and Non-perennial drainage areas were also identified. However, based on the development type, and the distance of the wetlands from the study site, they are not deemed to be at risk. Furthermore, the drainage areas do not receive and retain enough water to support riparian characteristics throughout the year.

The ephemeral depression (Pans) assessed on site was noted to be dry most of the year. Therefore, physical structure and soil characteristics were the main indicators used.

The study focused on features which were potentially most at risk as a result of the prospecting and associated activities The potential impacts of activities such as commercial farming drought, erosion and clearing of natural vegetation within the greater catchment were taken into consideration during the assessment.

Feature	Depression	Floodplain
Catchment Features and Current Impacts	The catchment area of this wetland is endorheic, meaning there is no outflow and surface water drains from the catchment towards the lowest part of the Depression. At the time of the field survey, no surface water was observed in the assessed wetlands. Major impacts in the catchment area, consist of livestock and game farming, and access roads along the wetland system.	The catchment area of this assessed unit is exorheic meaning there is outflow and surface water drains from the catchment towards the lowest part of the Floodplain. At the time of the field survey surface water was observed in the assessed wetland. Major impacts in the catchment area consist of prospecting and mining along the major river systems.
Wetland Type	Depression (grass pan)	Floodplain wetland (Orange river)
Downstream Features	None - depressions are endorheic systems	Mining and Agricultural activities.

#### Description of the assessed wetland areas on site.

Vegetation Characteristics	Vegetation is dominated by a mix of graminoid species	Vegetation was sparsely distributed along the length of the wetland and dominated by species of tall and short trees, shrubs and grasses ( <i>Celtis africana, Ziziphus</i> <i>mucronata, Senegalia mellifera, Vachellia</i> <i>karoo</i> and <i>Searsia lancea</i> )		
Algae Presence	None.	None.		
Aquatic Faunal Impacts	No major impacts were observed on site, as the study site was in a natural state with no major anthropogenic activities occurring near the wetland areas.	The greatest impact would be from an increased sediment load as a result of erosion from the upstream mining activities.		
Depth Characteristics	The depression was dry	Not assessed		
Flow Conditions	The depression was dry	Not assessed		
Water Clarity	The depression was dry	High turbidity.		
Water Odour	The depression was dry	No odour.		
Erosion Impacts	High erosion potential as the pan floor and bank are poorly vegetated.	High erosion potential as the wetland floor and banks are almost completely stripped of natural vegetation.		
Soil characteristics	Redoximorphic features such as mottling were present at the edges/borders of the wetlands. The pans were observed to present a white coloured substrate with the dried-up clays being white due to the presence of precipitated salts.	Alluvial deposits and Redoximorphic features such as mottling were present at the edges/borders of the floodplain		

Three modules, namely hydrology, geomorphology and vegetation, were assessed as a single unit for the HGM Units and subsequently an area weighted score was obtained for the HGM Units. The potential impacts of activities such as agriculture, drought, prospecting, mining, altered hydrological functions and clearing of natural vegetation within the greater catchment were taken into consideration during the assessment. The results are summarised below;

Wetland	Hydrology Module		Geomorphology Module		Water Quality		Vegetation Module		Overall PES	
Wettand	Impact Score	Trajectory of Change	Impact Score	Trajectory of Change	Impact Score	Trajectory of Change	Impact Score	Trajectory of Change	Score	
Depressions	А	$\rightarrow$	Α	$\rightarrow$	Α	$\rightarrow$	С	$\rightarrow$	В	
FP	С	$\rightarrow$	В	$\rightarrow$	Α	$\rightarrow$	С	$\rightarrow$	В	

The overall PES Category for the assessed wetlands is a B, which means the systems are largely natural with few modifications, but with some loss of natural habitats. Minimal change in ecosystem processes and loss of natural habitat has occurred but the natural habitat remains intact. The loss of natural habitat within the Floodplain is largely attributed to the historic and current mining activities that are occurring upstream of the wetland system. The wetland is currently in a modified state due to the lack of mitigation measures and rehabilitation being implemented. This resulted in increased sediment loads being transported downstream, affecting the system. Major impacts within the Depressions result from grazing and a dirt road traversing the wetland area. With that being noted, no other major impacts were observed within the study area and associated wetlands. The study area can be considered to be in a natural state. A potential decrease in the PES is likely to occur over the next few years if the prospecting activities occur within the exclusion zones, if further road construction takes place, and if further degradation of the catchment area occurs.

See full Report in Appendix 12

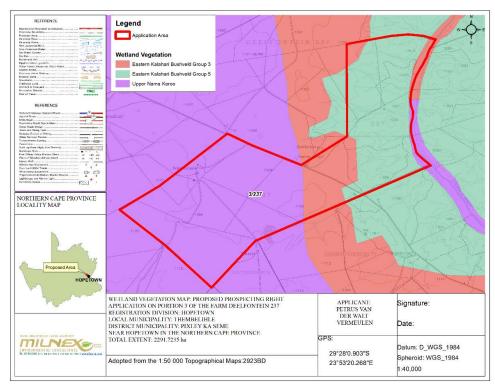


Figure 15: Wetland vegetation types associated with the study site.

## Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas

Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs) are a network of sites that are significant for the long-term viability of naturally occurring bird populations (Birdlife 2019). Many sites are also important for other forms of biodiversity; therefore, the conservation of Important Bird & Biodiversity Areas ensures the survival of a correspondingly large number of other animals and plants.

No IBAs were identified within the vicinity of the study site

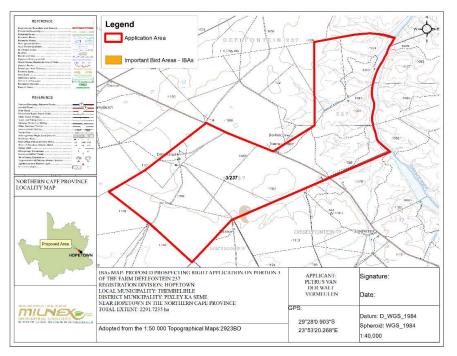


Figure 16: Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas associated with the study site.

Many avifaunal species are adaptable as they are habitat generalists and can therefore accommodate a certain degree of habitat degradation and transformation (Harrison *et al.*, 1997). Other species are extremely habitat specific and have to rely on certain habitat units for breeding, hunting or foraging and roosting. It is the survival of these species that become threatened as they cannot adapt to habitat changes. Habitat-specific species are sensitive to environmental change, with destruction of habitat being the leading cause of species decline worldwide (Barnes, 2000).

It is widely accepted that vegetation structure, rather than the actual plant species, influences bird species' distribution and abundance (Harrison *et al.*, 1997). Therefore, the vegetation description used in the Bird Atlas does not focus on lists of plant species, but rather on factors which are relevant to bird distribution. After generating a screening report of the study site, it was observed that the Near threatened *Neotis Iudwigii* (Ludwig's Bustard) is expected to occur within the region.

Ludwig's Bustards are adapted to flat, open, semi-arid shrublands of the succulent Karoo, Nama karoo and Namib. Depending on rainfall, these birds can be found in cultivated fields and pastures. Suitable breeding and feeding habitats influencing distribution were observed on site and described as grass and low shrubland (Taylor *et al.*, 2015). Birds which potentially occur in the study area and enjoy conservation status in the IUCN Red List are presented in the table below.

Scientific Name	Common Name	Red Data List Category	Likelihood of Occurrence
Sagittarius serpentarius	Secretary bird	EN	Occurs on site
Circus maurus	Black Harrier	EN	High likelihood
Neotis Ludwigii	Ludwig's Bustard	EN	Anecdotal occurrence
Oxyura maccoa	Maccoa Duck	VU	Possible
Gyps africanus	White-backed Vulture	CR	Possible
Torgos tracheliotos	Lappet-faced Vulture	EN	Possible
Gyps coprotheres	Cape Vulture	EN	High likelihood
Polemaetus bellicosus	Martial Eagle	EN	Possible

Scientific Name	Common Name	Red Data List Category	Likelihood of Occurrence
Aquila rapax	Tawny Eagle	VU	High likelihood
Calidris ferruginea	Curlew Sandpiper	NT	Possible
Phoeniconaias minor	Lesser Flamingo	NT	Not Likely
Glareola nordmanni	Black-winged pratincole	NT	Possible
Falco vespertinus	Red-footed Falcon	NT	Not Likely
Circus macrourus	Pallid Harrier	NT	Possible
Numenius arquata	Eurasian Curlew	NT	Not Likely
Ardeotis kori	Kori Bustard	NT	High likelihood
Bucorvus leadbeateri	Southern Ground-hornbill	VU	Possible

## **River Ecosystem Status**

The status of the river in question is Unmodified, Natural (Class A) in this area. The figure below depicts the river ecosystem status.

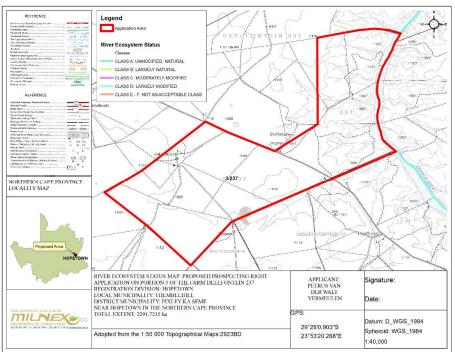


Figure 17: River Ecosystem Status

## Cultural and heritage aspects

According to the DEA Screening Report the proposed area falls within low to high Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme Sensitivity. Please see map colour map under **Appendix 7.** 

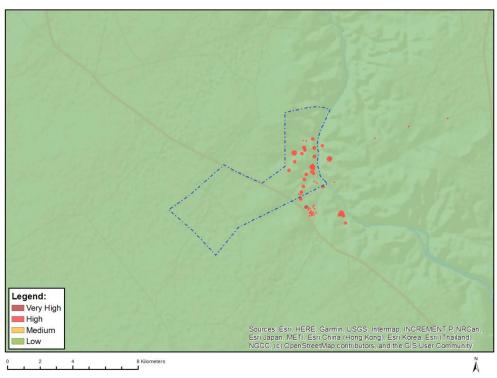
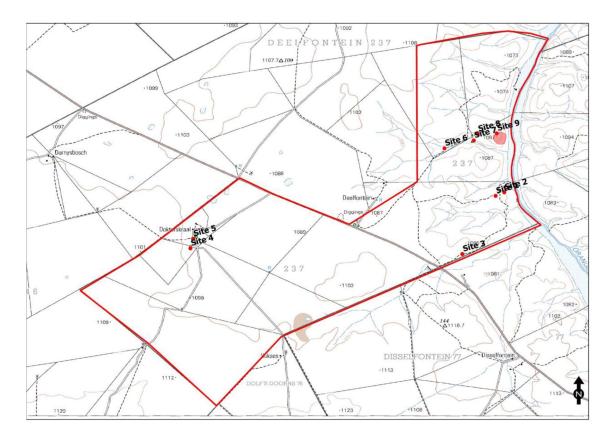


Figure 18: Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Combined Sensitivity

A total of nine sites were recorded during the survey which include one graveyard (Site 6) and six historical farmhouse complexes and other historical structures (Sites 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 8) and two large rock art sites (Sites 2 and 9). The historical farmhouses and other associated structures mostly date to the late 1800s to early 1900s and are associated with early farming activities. However, some of the headstones in the graveyard date to early 1800s which indicate a possible earlier occupation window in area. Early maps confirm that by the late 19th century the farms were already well established. Please note that the Doctor's Kraal complex is associated with a veterinary service that was provided probably from the 1890s. Although most sites correlate or overlap, note that the survey conducted by Van Ryneveld (2013a) recorded a total of 27 sites. This adds to the high density of the distribution of heritage sites on the farm.

See figure below indicating the sites that were recorded



See the location, significance of findings, impacts and proposed mitigation in the table below:

Site No			Field Rating of Significance	Impact	Proposed Mitigation
1	29.458193°S 23.912786°E	Historical livestock enclosures	Generally protected C: Low significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50     metres during prospecting     phase
2	29.457519°S 23.914426°E	Rock Art (engravings)	Generally protected A: High significance	High	<ul> <li>Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase</li> </ul>
3	29.469229°S 23.906471°E	Historical livestock enclosures	Generally protected C: Low significance	High	<ul> <li>Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase</li> </ul>
4	29.468153°S 23.854902°E	Historical livestock enclosure	Generally protected B: Medium significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase
5	29.466334°S 23.855395°E	Historical farmhouse complex	Generally protected B: Medium significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50     metres during prospecting     phase
6	29.449192°E 23.903092°E	Graveyard	Generally protected A High significance	High	<ul> <li>Fenced off and gate installed</li> <li>Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase</li> </ul>
7	29.447688°S 23.908647°E	Historical livestock enclosures (with spring)	Generally protected C: Low significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase
8	29.446466°S 23.909378°E	Historical farm house complex with enclosures	Generally protected C: Low significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase
9	29.446350°S 23.912996°E	Rock art (engravings)	Generally protected A: High significance	High	Maintain a buffer zone of 50 metres during prospecting phase

In this regard please note the following proposed mitigation measures:

 $\ensuremath{\mathbbm I}$  Take note of the position of the existing heritage sites;

I A buffer zone of 50 metres should be maintained;

- I The graveyard should be fenced off with a gate installed; and
- I Care should be taken to prevent any indirect impacts on the historical structures.

It is therefore recommended, from a cultural heritage perspective that the proposed prospecting initiatives may proceed, dependent on adherence to the proposed mitigation measures. Also, please note:

If the exhumation and reburial of the graveyards are envisaged it will entail social consultation and permit application. Other legislative measures which may be pertinent include the Removal of Graves and Dead Bodies Ordinance (Ordinance No. 7 of 1925), Regulations Relating to the Management of Human Remains (GNR 363 of 22 May 2013) made in terms of the National Health Act No. 61 of 2003, Ordinance on Exhumations (Ordinance No. 12 of 1980) as well as any local and regional provisions, laws and by-laws that may be in place. Note that unmarked graves are by default regarded as older than 60 years and therefore falls under the NHRA (Act No. 25 of 1999, Section 36).

Archaeological deposits usually occur below ground level. Should archaeological artefacts or skeletal material be revealed in the area during development activities, such activities should be halted, and a university or museum notified in order for an investigation and evaluation of the find(s) to take place (cf. NHRA (Act No. 25 of 1999), Section 36 (6)).

According to the DEA Screening Report a certain area of the proposed area falls within high Paleontology Theme Sensitivity. The rest of the area falls within a medium and low sensitive area. Please see map colour map under **Appendix 7**.

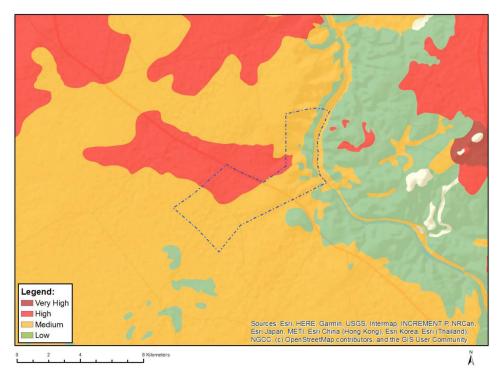
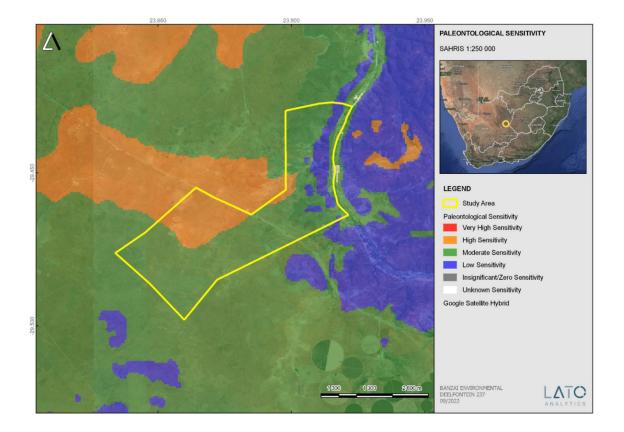


Figure 19: Relative Paleontology Theme Sensitivity

According to the SAHRIS Palaeosensitivity map the proposed development is underlain by sediments with a High (orange), Moderate (green), Low (blue) Palaeontological Significance.



Colour	Sensitivity	Required Action
RED	VERY HIGH	Field assessment and protocol for finds is required
ORANGE/YELLOW	HIGH	Desktop study is required and based on the outcome of
		the desktop study; a field assessment is likely
GREEN	MODERATE	Desktop study is required
BLUE	LOW	No palaeontological studies are required however a
		protocol for finds is required
GREY	INSIGNIFICANT/ZERO	No palaeontological studies are required
WHITE/CLEAR	UNKNOWN	These areas will require a minimum of a desktop study. As
		more information comes to light, SAHRA will continue to
		populate the map.

Cultural Heritage in South Africa (includes all heritage resources) is protected by the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) (NHRA). According to Section 3 of the Act, all Heritage resources include "all objects recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa, including archaeological and palaeontological objects and material, meteorites and rare geological specimens".

If such resources are found during the mining or development activities, they shall not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resource Authority, which means that before such sites are disturbed by development it is incumbent on the developer to ensure that a heritage impact assessment is done and the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority and SAHRA must be contacted immediately and work must stop.

If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:

- NHRA 38(4)c(i) If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)c(ii) If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)e The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources
  are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on
  the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly
  discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue
  operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;

If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the **Chance Find Protocol** must be implemented by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za) so that mitigation can be carry out by a paleontologist.

## Chance Find Procedure

- If a chance find is made the person responsible for the find must immediately stop working and all work that could impact that finding must cease in the immediate vicinity of the find.
- The person who made the find must immediately report the find to his/her direct supervisor which in turn must report
  the find to his/her manager and the ESO or site manager. The ESO or site manager must report the find to the
  relevant Heritage Agency (South African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA). (Contact details: SAHRA, 111
  Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462
  4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za). The information to the Heritage Agency must include photographs of the find, from
  various angles, as well as the GPS co-ordinates.
- A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage Agency within 24 hours of the find and must include the following: 1) date of the find; 2) a description of the discovery and a 3) description of the fossil and its context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS co-ordinates.
- Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery must be of high quality, in focus, accompanied by a scale. It is also important to have photographs of the vertical section (side) where the fossil was found.

Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.

- The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage. No attempt should be made to remove material from their environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered by a plastic sheet or sandbags. The Heritage agency will also be able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the find.
- In the event that the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be collected with extreme care by the ESO (site manager). Fossils finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from the rescue site.
- Once Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may continue with the development on the affected area.

Description of the socio-economic environment

### • Socio-economic conditions

The Pixley Ka Seme District Municipality is a Category C municipality situated in the south-east of the Northern Cape Province. It shares its borders with three other provinces, namely the Free State to the east, the Eastern Cape to the south-east, and the Western Cape to the south-west. It is the second-largest district of the five in the province, but makes up almost a third of its geographical area. The district is comprised of eight local municipalities: Ubuntu, Umsobomvu, Emthanjeni, Kareeberg, Renosterberg, Thembelihle, Siyathemba and Siyancuma. Its main town is De Aar. Traffic flows through the region, linking the major industrial areas of the country. The area has a low rainfall, while the largest river in South Africa flows through it. Two of the major dams in South Africa, the Vanderkloof and Gariep Dams, are situated on the borders of the district municipality

### Thembelihle Local Municipality

### **Key Statistics Summary**

## **Demographic Information**

	2016	2011
Population	16 230	15 701
Age Structure		
Population under 15	25.0%	30.9%
Population 15 to 64	68.5%	62.8%
Population over 65	6.5%	6.4%
Dependency Ratio		
Per 100 (15-64)	46.0	59.3
Sex Ratio		
Males per 100 females	104.6	103.3
Population Growth		
Perannum	0.75%	n/a
Labour Market		
Unemployment rate (official)	n/a	28.4%
Youth unemployment rate (official) 15-34	n/a	35.2%
Education (aged 20 +)		
No schooling	10.8%	15.1%
Matric	22.2%	19.9%
Higher education	5.0%	6.6%

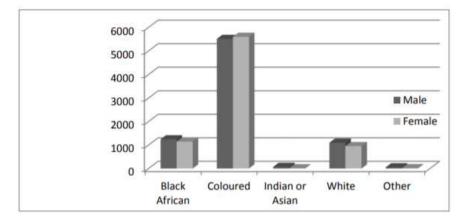
Household Dynamics		
Households	4 736	4 140
Average household size	3.4	3.7
Female headed households	32.4%	32.3%
Formal dwellings	77.4%	77.5%
Housing owned	51.0%	51.4%
Household Services		
Flush toilet connected to sewerage	66.4%	60.0%
Weekly refuse removal	59.4%	68.4%
Piped water inside dwelling	39.9%	33.5%
Electricity for lighting	84.2%	75.2%

The chart below shows the population growth from 2011 to 2016 in the Thembelihle Local Municipality.

## **Population Census 2011**

	Male	Female	Grand Total
Black African	1245	1146	2391
Coloured	5511	5601	11112
Indian or Asian	69	12	81
White	1101	954	2055
Other	51	15	66
Grand Total	7977	7728	15705

The population has grown from 15 705 in 2011 to 16 230 in 2016, which represents a population growth of 0.75% per annum. See the below figure for the demographics of the municipality.



Employment status across population groups

	Black African		Coloured		Indian or Asian		White		Other		Grand Total
-	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	
Employed	468	243	1332	906	36	3	483	345	42	3	3861
Unemployed	111	126	600	672		-	12	6	-	-	1527
Discouraged work-seeker	33	57	195	381	3	-	3	12		-	684
Other not economically active	264	333	1203	1470	18	3	186	291	6	6	3780
Age less than 15 years	-	-	-				-	-	-	-	
Not applicable	372	387	2178	2172	12	6	420	294	-	-	5841
Grand Total	1248	1146	5508	5601	69	12	1104	948	48	9	15693

## Piped Water by Source of Water for households

	Regional/loca I water scheme (operated by municipality or other water services provider)	Borehole	Spring	Rain water tank	Dam/pool/stagnant water	River/stream	Water vendor	Water tanker	Other
Piped (tap) water inside dwelling/institution	1131	174		3	3	75	-	6	-
Piped (tap) water inside yard	1254	480			15	33		30	
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling/institution	396	57	3		6	3	3		
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 200m and 500m from dwelling/institution	288	3							_
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance between 500m and 1000m (1km) from dwelling /institution	39	21							-
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 1000m (1km) from dwelling/institution	6	93						2	
No access to piped (tap) water	3	3				3		3	3
Unspecified								-	

Toilet facilities

### **Toilet facilities**

#### for Household weighted, NC076: Thembelihle

None	429
Flush toilet (connected to sewerage system)	2484
Flush toilet (with septic tank)	222
Chemical toilet	18
Pit toilet with ventilation (VIP)	456
Pit toilet without ventilation	486
Bucket toilet	9
Other	36
Unspecified	-
Not applicable	-
Grand Total	4140

# Type of dwelling by refuse removal

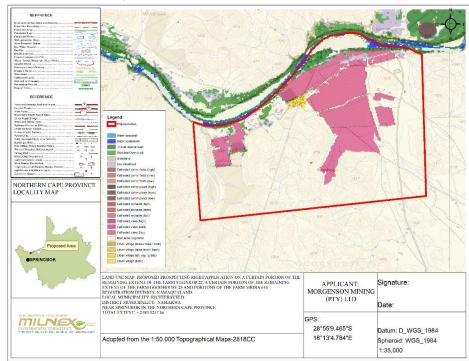
made of traditional	2385							
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials		33	72	534	45	21	~	-
	9	-	-	-	-	3		
Flat or apartment in a block of flats	30	-	-	6	3	-	-	-
Cluster house in complex	3		-	-	-	-	-	-
Townhouse (semi- detached house in a complex)	3	-	-	-	-	-		-
Semi-detached house	-	-			3	-		-
House/flat/room in backyard	15		6	3	-		-	-
Informal dwelling (shack; in backyard)	54	-	-	3	3	-	-	-
Informal dwelling (shack; not in backyard; e.g. in an informal/squatter settlement or on a	252	-	111	18	420	12	-	-
Thembelihle FINAL IDP / MAY,	/ for wider mu	nicipal area 2016/2	2017					Page

farm)	1							
			•	•		•	•	•==
Room/flatlet on a property or larger dwelling/servants quarters/granny flat	45	-		3				
Caravan/tent	6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other	33		3	-	-	-	-	-
Unspecified		-	-	-		-	-	-
Not applicable			*			-		

## Description of the current land uses.

According to **Figure 20 and Figure 21** the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21)

If applicable a Water Use License Application will be launched for conducting prospecting operations.



All infrastructure will be temporary and/or mobile.

Figure 20: Land use map associated with study site and surrounding areas.

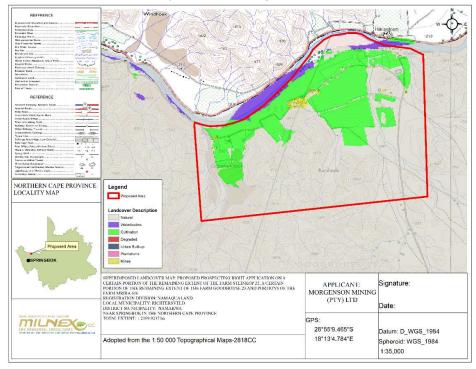


Figure 21: Landcover map associated with study site and surrounding areas.



Figure 22: Google earth map of the proposed area.

- v) IMPACTS AND RISKS IDENTIFIED INCLUDING THE NATURE, SIGNIFICANCE, CONSEQUENCE, EXTENT, DURATION AND PROBABILITY OF THE IMPACTS, INCLUDING THE DEGREE TO WHICH THESE IMPACTS -
- (aa) can be reversed;
- (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
- (cc) can be avoided, managed or mitigated;

## Significance of potential impacts

The following sections present the outcome of the significance rating exercise. The results suggest that the prospecting activities will have an impact on the natural vegetation and the agricultural activities, if not properly mitigated.

## **INITIAL CLEARANCE AND SITE PREPARATION PHASE**

**Direct impacts:** During this phase minor negative impacts are foreseen over the short term. The latter refers to a period of weeks. The site preparation may result in the loss or fragmentation of Ecological habitats, soil erosion, hydrology, and temporary noise disturbance, generation of waste, visual intrusions, increase in heavy vehicle traffic, and risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

Ecological Impacts

The proposed area falls within vegetation units: Kimberley Thornveld, Northern Upper Karoo, Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation & Vaalbos Rocky Schrubland, see the description below:

### **Kimberley Thornveld**

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 16%. Only 2% statutorily conserved in Vaalbos National Park as well as in Sandveld, Bloemhof Dam and S.A. Lombard Nature Reserves. Some 18% already transformed, mostly by cultivation. Erosion is very low. Area is mostly used for cattle farming or game ranching. Overgrazing leads to encroachment of Acacia mellifera subsp. detinens (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

### Northern Upper Karoo

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 21%. None conserved in statutory conservation areas. About 4% has been cleared for cultivation (the highest proportion of any type in the Nama-Karoo) or irreversibly transformed by building of dams (Houwater, Kalkfontein and Smart Syndicate Dams). Areas of human settlements are increasing in the northeastern part of this vegetation type (Hoffman et al. 1999). Erosion is moderate (46.2%), very low (32%) and low (20%). *Prosopis glandulosa*, regarded as one of the 12 agriculturally most important invasive alien plants in South Africa, is widely distributed in this vegetation type (Hoffman et al. 1999). *Prosopis* occurs in generally isolated patches, with densities ranging from very scattered to medium (associated with the lower Vaal River drainage system and the confluence with the Orange River) to localised closed woodland on the western border of the unit with Bushmanland Basin Shrubland (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

### Upper Gariep Alluvial Vegetation

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 16%. Less than 2% statutorily conserved in the Vaalbos National Park. Only about 2% already transformed (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

### Vaalbos Rocky Schrubland

**Conservation** Least threatened. Target 16%. Less than 2% statutorily conserved in the Vaalbos National Park. Only about 2% already transformed (Mucina & Rutherford, 2006).

### **DEA Screening Report findings:**

- Plant Species theme sensitivity: Low throughout the study area
- Aquatic Biodiversity sensitivity: Very High on the proposed area where water bodies have been identified and low throughout most of the study area
- Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity: Very High on eastern part of the proposed area and low throughout the rest of the area
- Animal Species sensitivity: Medium throughout the area

### PWP

The Prospecting Work Programme (PWP) states 200 boreholes will be drilled [impact: 2m (length) x 2m (breath)] and 50 pits [3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth)] will be dug. This calculates to a disturbance of  $\pm$  0.11ha

The whole application area is 2291.7235 ha thus the 0.11ha disturbance is very small compared to the size of the application area.

• Loss destruction or fragmentation of habitats -

According to Figure 20 and Figure 21 the proposed area is mostly covered by Low scrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21)

## PWP

The Prospecting Work Programme (PWP) states 200 boreholes will be drilled [impact: 2m (length) x 2m (breath)] and 50 pits [3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth)] will be dug. This calculates to a disturbance of  $\pm$  0.11ha

The whole application area is 2291.7235 ha thus the 0.11ha disturbance is very small compared to the size of the application area.

Environmental Impact Before Mitigation						Environmental Impact After Mitigation						
Potential Environmental Impact	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance
Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)	4	1	2	1	1	20 Very Low	4	1	2	1	1	20 Very Low
Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity	4	1	2	1	1	20 Very Low	4	1	2	1	1	20 Very Low
Alteration of water quality	4	1	1	1	1	15 Very Low	4	1	1	1	1	15 Very Low
Loss of terrestrial habitat	4	2	3	1	1	30 Low	4	2	3	1	1	30 Low
Loss of Aquatic Biota	4	1	1	1	1	15 Very Low	4	1	1	1	1	15 Very Low
Loss of Terrestrial Fauna	4	2	1	1	1	18 Very Low	4	2	1	1	1	18 Very Low
Loss of Terrestrial Flora	4	2	2	1	1	24 Very Low	4	2	2	1	1	24 Very Low
Introduction and spread of alien vegetation	4	2	3	1	1	30 Low	4	2	3	1	1	30 Low

Please note that the Impact Assessment Methodology for the Ecological Impacts differ from the methodology discussed in this Basic Assessment Report. The reason for this is that the methodology uses for the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Wetland assessment best suits this specific aspect.

Mitigation measures are discussed in Part B of the Basic Assessment Report

Please find methodology used on page 66-70 of the full Report, attached in Appendix 12

Loss of topsoil – Topsoil may be lost due to poor topsoil management (burial, erosion, etc.) during construction related soil
profile disturbance (levelling, excavations, disposal of spoils from excavations etc.) The effect will be the loss of soil fertility on
disturbed areas after rehabilitation.

Loss of topsoil	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3)	
Significance	Negative low (28)	Negative low (10)

Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>The following mitigation or management measures are provided:</li> <li>If an activity will mechanically disturb below surface in any way,</li> </ul>
	then any available topsoil should first be stripped from the entire surface and stockpiled for re-spreading during rehabilitation.
	<ul> <li>Topsoil stockpiles must be conserved against losses through erosion by establishing vegetation cover on them.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Dispose of all subsurface spoils from excavations where they will not impact on undisturbed land.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>During rehabilitation, the stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread over the entire disturbed surface.</li> </ul>
	Erosion must be controlled where necessary on top soiled areas.
	Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for constructional purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below.
	• Record the GPS coordinates of each area.
	Record the date of topsoil stripping.
	<ul> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> <li>Record the date of cessation of constructional (or operational) activities at the particular site.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Photograph the area on cessation of constructional activities.</li> <li>Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.</li> </ul>
	Section (f) of the EMPr also provide mitigation measures related to topsoil management.

<u>Soil erosion</u> – Soil erosion due to alteration of the land surface run-off characteristics. Alteration of run-off characteristics may be caused by construction related land surface disturbance, vegetation removal and the establishment of roads. Erosion will cause loss and deterioration of soil resources. This will result in grazing and cultivation areas being lost.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Geographical extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal (2)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3).		
Significance	Negative Medium (30)	Negative low (22)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	The following mitigation or mana	agement measures are provided:	
		em of run-off control, where it is safely disseminates run-off water	

<ul> <li>from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>Monitor the area regularly after larger rainfall events to determine where erosion may be initiated and then mitigate by modifying the soil micro-topography and revegetation or soil erosion control efforts accordingly.</li> </ul>
Include periodical site inspection in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence any erosion on site or downstream – refer to section (f) of the EMPr

<u>Temporary noise disturbance</u> - Preparation activities will result in the generation of noise over a period of months. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as excavators & and people working on the site. The noise impact is unlikely to be significant; but activities should be limited to normal working days and hours (6:00 – 18:00). Agricultural activities in the area also contribute to noise disturbance.

Temporary noise disturbance	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Short term (1)	Short term (1)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	Negligible cumulative impact (1).		
Significance	Negative low (18) Negative low (8)		
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise pollution are included in section (f) of the EMPr.		

<u>Generation of waste - general waste, construction waste, sewage and grey water</u> - The workers on site are likely to generate
general waste such as food wastes, packaging, bottles, etc. Construction waste is likely to consist of packaging, scrap metals,
waste cement, etc If any). The applicant will need to ensure that general and construction waste is appropriately disposed of
i.e. taken to the nearest licensed landfill. Sufficient ablution facilities must be provided, in the form of portable/VIP toilets.

Generation of waste	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2) - An additional demand for landfill space could result in significant cumulative impacts if services become unstable or unavailable, which in turn would negatively impact on the local community		
Significance Negative low (20) Negative		Negative low (7)	

Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, it is therefore important that all management actions and
	mitigation measures included in section (f) of the EMPr are
	implemented.

Impacts on heritage & Paleontological objects -

Heritage objects

According to the DEA Screening Report the Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme Sensitivity is low and the Paleontology Theme Sensitivity falls mostly within medium sensitivity.

Survey: A graveyard (Site 6), six historical farmhouse complexes and other historical structures (Sites 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 8) and two large rock art sites (Sites 2 and 9)

	Without mitigation	With mitigation	
Prospecting Phase			
Probability	Definite (5)	Very Improbable (1)	
Duration	Permanent (5)	Short term (2)	
Extent	Limited to the site (1)	Limited to the site (1)	
Magnitude	Very High (10)	Minor (2)	
Significance of Impact	80 (High)	5 (Low)	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Positive	
Reversibility	Low	Low	
Irreplaceable loss of resources?	Yes	None	
Cumulative impacts and indirect impacts	Prospecting phase may cause excessive vibrations.		
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, buffer zones (50 metres) should be maintained during prospecting developments		

Paleontological objects

Site	Probability	Duration	Magnitude	Reversibility	Irreplicable Loss	Cumulative Effect	Significance
1	2	4	1	4	4	2	17

Cultural Heritage in South Africa (includes all heritage resources) is protected by the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) (NHRA). According to Section 3 of the Act, all Heritage resources include "all objects recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa, including archaeological and palaeontological objects and material, meteorites and rare geological specimens".

If such resources are found during the mining or development activities, they shall not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resource Authority, which means that before such sites are disturbed by development it is incumbent on the developer to ensure that a heritage impact assessment is done and the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority and SAHRA must be contacted immediately and work must stop.

If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:

- NHRA 38(4)c(i) If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)c(ii) If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)e The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources
  are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on
  the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly
  discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue
  operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;

If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the **Chance Find Protocol** must be implemented by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za) so that mitigation can be carry out by a paleontologist.

#### **Chance Find Procedure**

- If a chance find is made the person responsible for the find must immediately stop working and all work that could impact that finding must cease in the immediate vicinity of the find.
- The person who made the find must immediately report the find to his/her direct supervisor which in turn must report
  the find to his/her manager and the ESO or site manager. The ESO or site manager must report the find to the
  relevant Heritage Agency (South African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA). (Contact details: SAHRA, 111
  Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462
  4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za). The information to the Heritage Agency must include photographs of the find, from
  various angles, as well as the GPS co-ordinates.
- A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage Agency within 24 hours of the find and must include the following: 1) date of the find; 2) a description of the discovery and a 3) description of the fossil and its context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS co-ordinates.
- Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery must be of high quality, in focus, accompanied by a scale. It is also important to have photographs of the vertical section (side) where the fossil was found.

Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.

- The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage. No attempt should be made to remove material from their environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered by a plastic sheet or sand bags. The Heritage agency will also be able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the find.
- In the event that the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be collected with extreme care by the ESO (site manager). Fossils finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from the rescue site.
- Once Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may continue with the development on the affected area.

*Indirect impacts:* The nuisance aspects generally associated with the installation of infrastructure or ground preparation will also be applicable to this development, which relates primarily to the increase in vehicle traffic associated with prospecting practices, the influx of job seekers to the area, risk to safety, livestock and farm infrastructure, and increased risk of veld fires.

Increase in vehicle traffic – The movement of heavy vehicles have the potential to damage local farm roads and create dust and safety impacts for other road users in the area. Access will be obtained from existing gravel roads off the R3112. The volume of traffic along this road is Low and the movement of heavy vehicles along this road is likely to damage the road surface and impact on other road users.

Increase in vehicle traffic	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2). If damage to roads is not repaired, then this will affect the surrounding road users, and result in higher maintenance costs for vehicles of the road users. The costs will be borne by road users who were not responsible for the damage.		
Significance	Negative Low (20)	Negative low (9)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>The potential impacts associated with heavy vehicles can be effectively mitigated. The mitigation measures include:</li> <li>The contractor must ensure that damage caused by construction or the off-gravel roads. The costs associated with the repair must be borne by the contractor;</li> <li>Dust suppression measures must be implemented for heavy vehicles such as wetting of gravel roads on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport sand and building materials are fitted with tarpaulins or covers;</li> <li>All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits.</li> </ul>		
	Also refer section (f) of the EMPr. For mitigation	ation measures related to traffic.	

• <u>Risk to safety, livestock / game and infrastructure</u> - The presence on and movement of workers on and off the site poses a potential safety threat to the natural area and the communities in the vicinity of the site. In addition, infrastructure, such as fences and gates, may be damaged and livestock losses may also result from gates being left open and/or fences being damaged or livestock theft linked either directly or indirectly to the presence of mine workers on the site.

Risk to safety, livestock and infrastructure	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)

rreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2) No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2), provided losses are compensated for.
Significance	Negative low (22) Negative low (9)
Significance Can impacts be mitigated?	Negative low (2)         Negative low (9)           Key mitigation measures include:         •         Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen should enter into a agreement with the landowner / local farmers in the area whereb damages to farm property etc. during the construction phase wi be compensated for. The agreement should be signed before th construction phase commences;           •         The construction area should be fenced off prior to th commencement of the construction phase. The movement of construction workers on the site should be confined to the fence off area;           •         Contractors appointed by Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeule should provide daily transport for low and semi-skilled workers t and from the site. This would reduce the potential risk or trespassing on the remainder of the farm and adjacent properties           •         Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen should be contained in th Code of Conduct to be signed between the proponent, th contractors and neighbouring landowners. The agreement shoul also cover loses and costs associated with fires caused b construction workers or construction related activities (see below)           •         The Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) shoul outline procedures for managing and storing waste on site specifically plastic waste that poses a threat to livestock if ingested.           •         Contractors appointed by Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen must ensure that all workers are informed at the outset of th construction workers or construction related activities (see below)

Increased risk of veld fires - The presence of construction workers and construction-related activities on the site poses an increased risk of grass fires that could in turn pose a threat to livestock, crops, wildlife, farmsteads and the communities in the area. In the process, infrastructure may also be damaged or destroyed and human lives threatened. The potential risk of grass fires was heightened by the windy conditions in the area, especially during the dry, windy winter months from May to October. In terms of potential mitigation measures, a fire-break should be constructed around the perimeter of the site prior to the commencement of the construction phase. In addition, fire-fighting equipment should be provided on site during the different phase of prospect.

Increased risk of veld fires	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Site (1)

Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	High (3)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Marginal loss of resource (2)
Cumulative impact	Negligible cumulative effects (1), p	rovided losses are compensated for.
Significance	Negative medium (45)	Negative low (20)
Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>to the commencement of the of</li> <li>Contractor should ensure that heating are not allowed except</li> <li>Contractor to ensure that co potential fire risk, such as we confined to areas where the rist or reduce the risk of fires in conditions when the risk of fires hould be taken during the higt</li> <li>Contractor to provide adequate a fire fighting vehicle;</li> <li>Contractor to provide fire-fight</li> <li>No construction staff, with accommodated on site over n</li> <li>As per the conditions of the of being caused by construction the appointed contractors mutications and the second state of the second sta</li></ul>	at open fires on the site for cooking or of in designated areas; instruction related activities that pose a relding, are properly managed and are isk of fires has been reduced. Measures include avoiding working in high wind es is greater. In this regard special care gh risk dry, windy winter months; e firefighting equipment on-site, including ing training to selected construction staff; the exception of security staff, to be ight; Code of Conduct, in the advent of a fire n workers and or construction activities, st compensate farmers for any damage contractor should also compensate the

# **OPERATIONAL PHASE**

**Direct impacts:** During the operational phase the study area will serve as a prospecting area and the impacts are generally associated with Ecological disturbances, soil erosion, change in land use, impacts associated with the, increase in storm water runoff, increased consumption of water, visual intrusion, the generation of general waste, leakage of hazardous materials, and the change in the sense of place. The operational phase will also have a direct positive impact through the provision of permanent employment opportunities and facilitating a positive economic growth. The abovementioned impacts are discussed in more detail below:

	E		menta e Mitig	-			Er	nviron After	menta <sup>.</sup> Mitig		act	
Potential Environmental Impact	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance
Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)	5	4	2	2	4	72 Medium-Low	4	4	2	1	4	56 Medium-Low

Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity	5	4	2	2	4	72 Medium-Low	3	4	2	1	4	49 Low
Alteration of water quality	4	2	1	2	4	42 Low	3	2	1	1	4	30 Low
Loss of terrestrial habitat	5	4	4	2	5	99 Medium- High	4	4	3	1	4	64 Medium-Low
Loss of Aquatic Biota	3	4	3	2	4	63 Medium-Low	2	4	3	1	4	48 Low
Loss of Terrestrial Fauna	4	4	3	2	4	72 Medium-Low	3	4	3	1	4	56 Medium-Low
Loss of Terrestrial Flora	5	4	4	2	4	90 Medium- High	4	4	3	1	4	64 Medium-Low
Introduction and spread of alien vegetation	4	4	4	2	5	88 Medium- High	2	4	2	1	4	42 Low

Please note that the Impact Assessment Methodology for the Ecological Impacts differ from the methodology discussed in this Basic Assessment Report. The reason for this is that the methodology uses for the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Wetland assessment best suits this specific aspect.

Mitigation measures are discussed in Part B of the Basic Assessment Report

Please find methodology used on page 66-70 of the full Report, attached in Appendix 12

• <u>Soil erosion</u> – The largest risk factor for soil erosion will be during the operational phase when the prospecting activity ensues and soil is left bare until rehabilitation is initiated. Erosion will be localised within the site. This will ultimately lead to the irretrievable commitment of this resource. The measurable effect of reducing erosion by utilizing mitigation measures may reduce possible erosion significantly.

Soil erosion	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating		
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative		
Extent	Local (2)	Site (1)		
Probability	Probable (3)	Possible (2)		
Duration	Long term (3)	Medium term (2)		
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)		
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)		
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)		
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2), should these impacts occur, there will be a cumulative impact on the air and water resources in the study area in terms of pollution.			
Significance	Negative low (28)	Negative Low (9)		
Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>Yes, to avoid soil erosion it will be a good practice to not remove all the vegetation at once but to only clear the area as it becomes necessary and to implement concurrent rehabilitation.</li> <li>The following mitigation or management measures are provided: Implement an effective system of run-off control, where it is required, that</li> </ul>			

<ul> <li>collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.</li> <li>Monitor the area regularly after larger rainfall events to determine where erosion may be initiated and then mitigate by modifying the soil micro- topography and revegetation or soil erosion control efforts accordingly</li> </ul>
Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.

• <u>Change in land-use</u> – The use of the area for the operation of the prospecting activity will not disturb existing activities on most of the portions as both (existing activities and prospecting activities) can be done concurrently.

Change in land use	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating			
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative			
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)			
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)			
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)			
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)			
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)			
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	Marginal loss of resource (2)			
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative effects (2) – the right holder should enter into a surface use				
	agreement with the landowner to comp	ensate for any financial losses.			
Significance	Negative low (22)	Negative low (10)			
Can impacts be mitigated?	The proponent should establish a	Rehabilitation Fund to be used to			
	rehabilitate the area once the propose	d facility has been decommissioned.			
	The fund should be funded by reven	ue generated during the operational			
	phase of the project. The motivation for	the establishment of a Rehabilitation			
	Fund is based on the experience in the mining sector where many mines on				
	closure have not set aside sufficient funds for closure and decommissioning.				
		-			
	Also refer to section (f) of the EMPr.				

 <u>Generation of alternative land use income</u> – Income generated through the potential prospecting without bulk sampling of the minerals applied for will provide the community with increased cash flow and rural livelihood and thereby improve the financial sustainability of farming on site.

Generation of alternative land use income	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive
Geographical extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Probable (3)	Probable (3)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3)	
Significance	Positive low (26)	Positive Low (26)
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required.	·

• <u>Increase in storm water runoff</u> – The development will potentially result in an increase in storm water run-off that needs to be managed to prevent soil erosion, especially where vegetation will be cleared. Not all the vegetation should be removed at once.

Increase in storm water runoff	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Barely reversible (3)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impact (3) - Sho a cumulative impacts on the wider a	ould these impacts occur, there will be area.	
Significance	Negative Low (26)	Negative low (9)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes. It is therefore important that all management actions and mitigation measures included in section (f) of the EMPr. are implemented to ensure that these impacts do not occur		

• <u>Increased consumption of water</u> – Additional water requirements related to the potable water supply for employees and workers. Water will also be used for dust suppression.

Increased consumption of water	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating			
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative			
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)			
Probability	Definite (4)	Probable (3)			
Duration	Medium term (3)	Medium term (3)			
Magnitude	Low (1)	Low (1)			
Reversibility	Irreversible (4)	Irreversible (4)			
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resources (2)	Marginal loss of resources (2)			
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative impacts (3) - An ad	dditional demand on water sources could			
	result in a significant cumulative impact	with regards to the availability of water.			
Significance	Negative low (18)	Negative Medium (17)			
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions and mitigation measures related to the use of water are				
	included in section (f) of the EMPr.	•			

<u>Generation of waste</u> – Workers will be present on site from 6:00 – 18:00, Monday to Saturday. Sources of general waste will be waste food, packaging, paper, etc. General waste will be stored on site in a skip bin with a lid, when the skip bin is full the content must be removed to a license landfill site.

Generation of waste	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)
Magnitude	medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Partly reversible (2)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)
Cumulative impact	,	itional demand for landfill space could acts with regards to the availability of
Significance	Negative low (22)	Negative low (9)
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to section (f) of the EMPr.	o waste management are included in

<u>Leakage of hazardous materials</u> - The proposed prospecting activity will make use of machinery that use fuel and oil.
 Leakage of these oils and fuel can contaminate water supplies and must be prevented by constructing oil and diesel permeable bunds to ensure that any spills are suitably attenuated and not released into the environment.

Leakage of hazardous materials	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating			
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative			
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)			
Probability	Possible (2)	Unlikely (1)			
Duration	Medium term (2)	Short term (1)			
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)			
Reversibility	Partly reversible (2)	Completely reversible (1)			
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Marginal loss of resource (2)	No loss of resource (1)			
Cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible t	o no cumulative effects (1) if mitigation			
	measures and management plans are	e put in place.			
Significance	Negative low (20)	Negative low (6)			
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes. It is therefore important that all management actions and mitigation				
	measures included in the section (f) o	measures included in the section (f) of EMPr are implemented to ensure that			
	these impacts do not occur.	these impacts do not occur.			

<u>Noise disturbance</u> - Prospecting activities may result in the generation of noise over a period of 5 years. Sources of noise are likely to include vehicles, the use of machinery such as backactors, drill rigs and people working on the site; but prospecting activities should be limited to normal working days and some Saturdays and hours (6:00 – 18:00).

Temporary noise disturbance	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Definite (4)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)	
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	No loss of resource (1)	No loss of resource (1)	
Cumulative impact	Low cumulative impact (2).	ŀ	
Significance	Negative low (24)	Negative low (10)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	Yes, management actions related to noise pollution are included in section ( of the EMPr.		

*Indirect impacts:* The operational phase will have an indirect negative impact through the change in the sense of place and an indirect positive impact through the provision of additional electrical infrastructure.

• Potential impact on tourism - There are no tourist facilities in close proximity to the proposed area.

Potential impacts on tourism	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)
Probability	Unlikely (1)	Unlikely (1)
Duration	Medium term (2)	Medium term (2)
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Low (1)
Reversibility	Completely reversible (1)	Completely reversible (1)
Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A
Cumulative impact	N/A	

Significance	Negative low (12)	Negative low (6)
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation required	

# **DECOMMISIONING PHASE (MINE CLOSURE AND REHABILITATION)**

**Direct impacts:** Typically, the major social impacts associated with the decommissioning phase are linked to the loss of jobs and associated income. This has implications for the households who are directly affected, the communities within which they live. If infrastructures are removed after a 5 year period, the site will be returned to its natural state. Therefore, the physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting area.

	E	nviron Befor		l Impa			Er	nviron After	menta <sup>,</sup> Mitig		act	
Potential Environmental Impact	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance	Frequency of Impact	Frequency of Activity	Severity	Spatial Scale	Duration	Significance
Loss of terrestrial habitat	5	4	4	2	5	99 Medium- High	4	4	3	1	4	64 Medium-Low
Changing the physical structure within a water resource (habitat)	5	4	2	2	4	72 Medium-Low	4	4	2	1	4	56 Medium-Low
Introduction and spread of alien vegetation	4	4	4	2	5	88 Medium- High	2	4	2	1	4	42 Low

Please note that the Impact Assessment Methodology for the Ecological Impacts differ from the methodology discussed in this Basic Assessment Report. The reason for this is that the methodology uses for the Terrestrial Biodiversity and Wetland assessment best suits this specific aspect.

Mitigation measures are discussed in Part B of the Basic Assessment Report

Please find methodology used on page 66-70 of the full Report, attached in Appendix 12

<u>Rehabilitation of the physical environment</u> – The physical environment will benefit from the closure of the prospecting
area since the site will be restored to its pre-prospecting state. The areas that were prospected must be rehabilitated in
such a way that it can support the existing pre-prospecting activity of that specific area. Existing pre-prospecting activities
include agricultural activities (livestock grazing & crop production).

Rehabilitation of the physical environment	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Positive	Positive	
Extent	Site (1)	Site (1)	
Probability	Definite (4)	Definite (4)	
Duration	Long term (3)	Long term (3)	
Magnitude	High (3)	High (3)	
Reversibility	N/A	N/A	

Irreplaceable loss of resources	N/A	N/A			
Cumulative impact	The impact would result i	n negligible to no cumulative effects (1)			
Significance	Positive low (27)	Positive low (27)			
Can impacts be mitigated?	No mitigation measures	No mitigation measures required.			

 Loss of employment - The decommissioning of the facility has the potential to have a negative social impact on the local community as it will create job losses.

Loss of employment	Pre-mitigation impact rating	Post mitigation impact rating	
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Negative	
Extent	Local (2)	Local (2)	
Probability	Possible (2)	Possible (2)	
Duration	Permanent (4)	Long term (3)	
Magnitude	Medium (2)	Medium (2)	
Reversibility	N/A	N/A	
Irreplaceable loss of resources	Significant loss of resource (3)	Significant loss of resource (3)	
Cumulative impact	Medium cumulative effects (3)		
Significance	Negative low (28)	Negative low (26)	
Can impacts be mitigated?	<ul> <li>facility should be dismant decommissioning;</li> <li>Mr Petrus Van Der Walt</li> </ul>	ure associated with the proposed led and transported off-site on <b>Vermeulen</b> should establish an Trust Fund to cover the costs of	

Indirect impacts: No indirect impacts are anticipated from the decommissioning phase of the proposed development.

# vi) METHODOLOGY USED IN DETERMINING AND RANKING THE NATURE, SIGNIFICANCE, CONSEQUENCES, EXTENT, DURATION AND PROBABILITY OF POTENTIAL ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACTS AND RISKS

#### Method of environmental assessment

The environmental assessment aims to identify the various possible environmental impacts that could results from the proposed development. Different impacts need to be evaluated in terms of its significance and in doing so highlight the most critical issues to be addressed.

Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics which include context and intensity of an impact. Context refers to the geographical scale i.e. site, local, national or global whereas intensity is defined by the severity of the impact e.g. the magnitude of deviation from background conditions, the size of the area affected, the duration of the impact and the overall probability of occurrence. Significance is calculated as shown in the Table below.

Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The total number of points scored for each impact indicates the level of significance of the impact.

#### Impact Rating System

Impact assessment must take account of the nature, scale and duration of impacts on the environment whether such impacts are positive or negative. Each impact is also assessed according to the following project phases:

- Construction
- Operation
- Decommissioning

Where necessary, the proposal for mitigation or optimisation of an impact should be detailed. A brief discussion of the impact and the rationale behind the assessment of its significance should also be included. The rating system is applied to the potential impacts on the receiving environment and includes an objective evaluation of the mitigation of the impact. In assessing the significance of each impact the following criteria is used:

#### Table: The rating system

	NATURE							
	Include a brief description of the impact of environmental parameter being assessed in the context of the project. This criterion includes a brief written statement of the environmental aspect being impacted upon by a particular action or activity.							
	GEOGRAPHICAL EXTENT							
This is d	efined as the area over which the im	pact will be experienced.						
1	Site	The impact will only affect the site.						
2	Local/district	Will affect the local area or district.						
3	Province/region	Will affect the entire province or region.						
4	International and National	Will affect the entire country.						
		PROBABILITY						
This des	This describes the chance of occurrence of an impact.							
1	Unlikely	The chance of the impact occurring is extremely low (Less than a 25% chance of occurrence).						
2	Possible	The impact may occur (Between a 25% to 50% chance of occurrence).						
3	Probable	The impact will likely occur (Between a 50% to 75% chance of occurrence).						
4	Definite	Impact will certainly occur (Greater than a 75% chance of occurrence).						
		DURATION						
This des	cribes the duration of the impacts. D	uration indicates the lifetime of the impact as a result of the proposed activity.						
1	Short term	The impact will either disappear with mitigation or will be mitigated through natural processes in a span shorter than the construction phase $(0 - 1 \text{ years})$ , or the impact will last for the period of a relatively short construction period and a limited recovery time after construction, thereafter it will be entirely negated $(0 - 2 \text{ years})$ .						
2	Medium term	The impact will continue or last for some time after the construction phase but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter (2 $-10$ years).						
3	Long term	The impact and its effects will continue or last for the entire operational life of the development, but will be mitigated by direct human action or by natural processes thereafter $(10 - 30 \text{ years})$ .						

	SIGNIFICANCE							
4	High cumulative impact	The impact would result in significant cumulative effects						
3	Medium cumulative impact	The impact would result in minor cumulative effects.						
2	Low cumulative impact	The impact would result in insignificant cumulative effects.						
1	Negligible cumulative impact	The impact would result in negligible to no cumulative effects.						
may bec		pacts. A cumulative impact is an effect which in itself may not be significant but ting or potential impacts emanating from other similar or diverse activities as a						
		CUMULATIVE EFFECT						
4	Complete loss of resources	The impact is result in a complete loss of all resources.						
3	Significant loss of resources	The impact will result in significant loss of resources.						
2	Marginal loss of resource	The impact will result in marginal loss of resources.						
1	No loss of resource	The impact will not result in the loss of any resources.						
	-	will be irreplaceably lost as a result of a proposed activity.						
		PLACEABLE LOSS OF RESOURCES						
4	Irreversible	The impact is irreversible and no mitigation measures exist.						
3	Barely reversible	The impact is unlikely to be reversed even with intense mitigation measure						
2	Partly reversible	The impact is partly reversible but more intense mitigation measures a required.						
1	Completely reversible	The impact is reversible with implementation of minor mitigation measures.						
This des	cribes the degree to which an impact	can be successfully reversed upon completion of the proposed activity.						
		REVERSIBILITY						
4	Very high	permanently ceases and is irreversibly impaired. Rehabilitation and remediation often impossible. If possible rehabilitation and remediation ofter unfeasible due to extremely high costs of rehabilitation and remediation.						
3	High	impaired and may temporarily cease. High costs of rehabilitation and remediation. Impact affects the continued viability of the system/component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component						
		and maintains general integrity (some impact on integrity). Impact affects the continued viability of the system/ component and the quality, use, integrity and functionality of the system or component is severely						
2	Medium	Impact alters the quality, use and integrity of the system/component bu system/component still continues to function in a moderately modified way						
1	Low	Impact affects the quality, use and integrity of the system/component in a way that is barely perceptible.						
Describe	es the severity of an impact.							
		INTENSITY/ MAGNITUDE						
4	Permanent	or natural process will not occur in such a way or such a time span that the impact can be considered indefinite.						
		The only class of impact that will be non-transitory. Mitigation either by man						

Significance is determined through a synthesis of impact characteristics. Significance is an indication of the importance of the impact in terms of both physical extent and time scale, and therefore indicates the level of mitigation required. The calculation of the significance of an impact uses the following formula:

(Extent + probability + reversibility + irreplaceability + duration + cumulative effect) x magnitude/intensity.

The summation of the different criteria will produce a non-weighted value. By multiplying this value with the magnitude/intensity, the resultant value acquires a weighted characteristic which can be measured and assigned a significance rating.

Points	Impact significance rating	Description
6 to 28	Negative low impact	The anticipated impact will have negligible negative effects and will require little to no mitigation.
6 to 28	Positive low impact	The anticipated impact will have minor positive effects.
29 to 50	Negative medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate negative effects and will require moderate mitigation measures.
29 to 50	Positive medium impact	The anticipated impact will have moderate positive effects.
51 to 73	Negative high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant effects and will require significant mitigation measures to achieve an acceptable level of impact.
51 to 73	Positive high impact	The anticipated impact will have significant positive effects.
74 to 96	Negative very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant effects and are unlikely to be able to be mitigated adequately. These impacts could be considered "fatal flaws".
74 to 96	Positive very high impact	The anticipated impact will have highly significant positive effects.

# vii) THE POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IMPACTS THAT THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY (IN TERMS OF THE INITIAL SITE LAYOUT) AND ALTERNATIVES WILL HAVE ON THE ENVIRONMENT AND THE COMMUNITY THAT MAY BE AFFECTED.

(Provide a discussion in terms of advantages and disadvantages of the initial site layout compared to alternative layout options to accommodate concerns raised by affected parties)

- Ecological Impacts
- Increased ambient noise levels resulting from increased traffic movement during all prospecting phases.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on environmental resources utilized by communities, landowners and other stakeholders.
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts resulting from hydrocarbon spills and soil erosion which may impact on ecosystem functioning.
- Potential decrease in water levels due to abstraction.
- Increased vehicle activity with in the area resulting in the possible destruction and disturbance of fauna and flora.
- Influx of persons (job seekers) to site as a result of increased activity and the possible resultant increase in opportunistic crime.
- Potential visual impacts caused by prospecting activities without bulk sampling.
- Prospecting will be undertaken by specialist sub contractors and it is not anticipated that employment opportunities for local and / or regional communities will result from the prospecting activities.
- Prospecting activities may result in localised visual impacts.

#### viii) THE POSSIBLE MITIGATION MEASURES THAT COULD BE APPLIED AND THE LEVEL OF RISK.

(With regard to the issues and concerns raised by affected parties provide a list of the issues raised and an assessment/ discussion of the mitigations or site layout alternatives available to accommodate or address their concerns, together with an assessment of the impacts or risks associated with the mitigation or alternatives considered).

Negative impacts on vegetation, soil and the water resources associated with the prospecting activity have been identified through the BAR & EMPr process. Mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B must be implemented in order to minimise these potential impacts.

### Noise

Site activities must take place during the day (06:00 – 18:00) to avoid night time noise disturbances and night time collisions with fauna.

### Visual impact

Dust suppression measures must be implemented.

### Soil

- Disturbances to soil should be limited as far as possible.
- Erosion control measures should be implemented if necessary.
- Oils and lubricants must be stored in lined containment structures.
- Drip trays should be used where necessary.
- Waste bins should be provided and waste should be removed and disposed of at a licensed landfill site.
- Rehabilitation should be done concurrently.

### Water

- Before any water is abstracted, a geo-hydro study should be conducted in order to determine the specific yield.
- Oils and lubricants must be stored in lined containment structures.
- Drip trays should be used where necessary.
- Erosion control measures should be implemented if necessary.

### Ecological

- Footprint should be kept as minimal as possible
- Mitigation measures in Part B & the Ecological Report should be implemented

### ix) MOTIVATION WHERE NO ALTERNATIVE SITES WERE CONSIDERED.

As discussed in the previous section, the possibility to encounter further Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds (Kimberlite) & Diamonds (DIA) on Portion 3 of the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD, was identified.

# x) STATEMENT MOTIVATING THE ALTERNATIVE DEVELOPMENT LOCATION WITHIN THE OVERALL SITE.

### (Provide a statement motivating the final site layout that is proposed)

The site is preferred due to its possibility of having Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite).

# I. FULL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROCESS UNDERTAKEN TO IDENTIFY, ASSESS AND RANK THE IMPACTS AND RISKS THE ACTIVITY WILL IMPOSE ON THE PREFERRED SITE (IN RESPECT OF THE FINAL SITE LAYOUT PLAN) THROUGH THE LIFE OF THE ACTIVITY.

i. A description of all environmental issues and risks that are identified during the environmental impact assessment process

### Process for the identification of key issues

The methodology for the identification of key issues aims, as far as possible, to provide a user-friendly analysis of information to allow for easy interpretation.

- <u>Checklist</u>: The checklist consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts.
- <u>Matrix</u>: The matrix analysis provides a holistic indication of the relationship and interaction between the various activities, development phases and the impact thereof on the environment. The method aims at providing a first order cause and effect relationship between the environment and the proposed activity. The matrix is designed to indicate the relationship between the different stressors and receptors which leads to specific impacts. The matrix also indicates the specialist studies, which will be submitted as part of the Environmental Impact Report in order to address the potentially most significant impacts.

### Checklist analysis

The site visit was conducted to ensure a proper analysis of the site specific characteristics of the study area. The table below provides a checklist, which is designed to stimulate thought regarding possible consequences of specific actions and so assist scoping of key issues. It consists of a list of structured questions related to the environmental parameters and specific human actions. They assist in ordering thinking, data collection, presentation and alert against the omission of possible impacts. The table highlights certain issues, which are further analysed in matrix format.

Question	YES	NO	Un- sure	Description
1. Are any of the following located on the site ea	rmarked	d for the	e develo	pment?
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	×			The Orange River boarders the East side of the proposed area. According to the Wetland areas map there are 2 Depressions present wetland and there are 2 Unchannelled valley-bottom wetlands on the proposed area. Multiple drainage lines were also identified
II. A conservation or open space area		×		According to the Protected Area map the site does not fall within a Formally Protected area or Threatened Ecosystem.
III. An area that is of cultural importance		×		According to the DEA Screening Report the area falls within a low Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme Sensitivity, wit some small areas classified as High ( <b>Appendix 7</b> )

Table: Environmental checklist

IV. Site of geological significance			×	According to the DEA Screening Report a certain area of the proposed area falls within mostly Medium Paleontology Theme Sensitivity ans a small area within a high sensitive area. ( <b>Appendix 7</b> ). If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations of pits the Chance Find must be implemented.
V. Areas of outstanding natural beauty		×		
VI. Highly productive agricultural land			×	According to the Land Capability map the proposed area falls within land capability Class 7 ( <b>Appendix 5</b> ). However, the proposed area has to knowledge no agricultural fields
VII. Floodplain			×	The Orange River boarders the North side of the proposed area. According to the Wetland areas map the Orange River is not classified as a floodplain on this specific section
VIII. Indigenous forest			×	According to <b>Figure 20 and Figure 21</b> the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21). The property also borders the Orange River on its Eastern boundaries.
IX. Grass land	×			According to <b>Figure 20 and Figure 21</b> the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21). The property also borders the Orange River on its Eastern boundaries.
X. Bird nesting sites		×		According to the Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBA) map it does not fall within an IBA.
			×	The proposed areas is mostly natural
XI. Red data species				

I. Removal of people		×		None.
II. Visual Impacts	×			The visual impact will be managed
III. Noise pollution	×			The noise impact will be limited to working hours.
IV. Construction of an access road		×		Access will be obtained from existing gravel roads of the 3112.
V. Risk to human or valuable ecosystems due to explosion/fire/ discharge of waste into water or air.		×		
VI. Accumulation of large workforce (>50 manual workers) into the site.		×		Employment opportunities will be created during the different phase of the project
VII. Utilisation of significant volumes of local raw materials such as water, wood etc.		×		The application is for a prospecting right without bulk sampling.
VIII. Job creation	×			Employment opportunities will be created during the different phase of the project
IX. Traffic generation		×		Little to none
X. Soil erosion	×			The application is for a prospecting right without bull sampling. Soil erosion could occur, mitigation measures are available in the EMPr
XI. Installation of additional bulk telecommunication transmission lines or facilities		×		None.
3. Is the proposed project located near the foll	owing?			
I. A river, stream, dam or wetland	×			The Orange River boarders the East side of the proposed area. According to the Wetland areas may there are 2 Depressions present wetland and there are 2 Unchannelled valley-bottom wetlands on the proposed area. Multiple drainage lines were also identified
II. A conservation or open space area		×		
III. An area that is of cultural importance			X	
IV. A site of geological significance			×	
V. An area of outstanding natural beauty			x	
VI. Highly productive agricultural land		×		According to the Land Capability map the proposed area falls within land capability Class 7 ( <b>Appendix 5</b> ) However, the proposed area has to knowledge no agricultural fields. The areas to the south of the area do have some cultivated lands.
VII. A tourist resort			×	
VIII. A formal or informal settlement			×	

Matrix analysis

The matrix describes the relevant listed activities, the aspects of the development that will apply to the specific listed activity, a description of the environmental issues and potential impacts, the significance and magnitude of the potential impacts, and the mitigation of the potential impacts. The matrix also highlights areas of particular concern, which requires more in depth assessment. Each cell is evaluated individually in terms of the nature of the impact, duration and its significance – should no mitigation measures be applied. This is important since many impacts would not be considered insignificant if proper mitigation measures were implemented. The matrix also provides an indication if mitigation measures are available.

In order to conceptualise the different impacts the matrix specify the following:

- Stressor: Indicates the aspect of the proposed activity, which initiates and cause impacts on elements of the environment.
- **Receptor**: Highlights the recipient and most important components of the environment affected by the stressor.
- Impacts: Indicates the net result of the cause-effect between the stressor and receptor.
- Mitigation: Impacts need to be mitigated to minimise the effect on the environment.

Milnex CC: BAR262PR – BAR & EMPr: Environmental Authorisation Application of Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen for the proposed Prospecting Right for the prospecting of Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) and Diamonds in Kimberlite Hopetown RD.

# J. AN ASSESSMENT OF EACH IDENTIFIED POTENTIALLY SIGNIFICANT IMPACT AND RISK

LISTED ACTIVITY	ASPECTS OF THE DEVELOPMENT	POTENTIAL IMPACTS			NCE AND M		MITIGATION OF POTENTIAL IMPACTS	SPECIALIST STUDIES /										
(The Stressor)	ACTIVITY		Receptors	Impact description	Minor	Major	Duration	Possible Mitigation	INFORMATION									
				CONSTRUCTION PHASE	1	I		1										
Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 27: "The clearance of an area of 1 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares of indianana uppetition"	Areas earmarked for		Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Loss or fragmentation of indigenous natural vegetation.</li> <li>Loss of sensitive species.</li> <li>Loss or fragmentation of habitats.</li> </ul>		-	М	Yes	-									
indigenous vegetation"	prospecting will need to be cleared, topsoil will be		Air	<ul> <li>Air pollution due to the increase of traffic.</li> <li>Dust from mining/prospecting activities</li> </ul>	-		М	Yes	-									
Listing Notice 3, GNR324, Activity 12: "The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation. (g) Northern Cape: (ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;	stockpiled separately.	IRONMENT	Soil	<ul> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Loss of topsoil.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> </ul>	-	-	S	Yes	-									
bioregional plans,		NL ENV	Geology	<ul> <li>It is not foreseen that the removal of indigenous vegetation will impact on the geology or vice versa.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-									
		tockpiled separately.	BIOPHYSIC	Orgentiation       Existing services       • Generation of waste the licensed landfill site.         Orgentiation       • Generation of sewage the licensed landfill site.         Orgentiation       • Generation of sewage the licensed landfill site.         Orgentiation       • Generation of sewage the licensed landfill site.         Orgentiation       • Generation of sewage the licensed landfill site.         Orgentiation       • Generation of sewage the licensed landfill site.	Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the	-		S	Yes	-								
			Ground water	Pollution due to construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-									
		NMENT										Surface water	<ul> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams/wetlands).</li> </ul>		-	S	Yes	-
				Local unemployment rate	<ul><li>Job creation.</li><li>Business opportunities.</li><li>Skills development.</li></ul>		+	S	Yes	-								
									RONMENT	Visual landscape	Potential visual impact on residents of farmsteads and motorists in close proximity to proposed facility.	-		L	Yes	-		
			Traffic volumes	Increase in construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-									
		ONOMIC	Health & Safety	<ul><li>Air/dust pollution.</li><li>Road safety.</li><li>Increased risk of veld fires.</li></ul>		-	S	Yes	-									
			OCIAL/ECC	Noise levels	• The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, the use of machinery such as drills, excavators, dumper trucks, people working on the site, etc.	-		L	Yes	-								
			Tourism industry	• Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the construction activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-									

Milnex CC: BAR262PR – BAR & EMPr: Environmental Authorisation Application of Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen for the proposed Prospecting Right for the prospecting of Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) and Diamonds in Kimberlite Hopetown RD.

			Heritage resources	<ul> <li>Removal or destruction of archaeological and/or paleontological sites.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of buildings, structures, places and equipment of cultural significance.</li> <li>Removal or destruction of graves, cemeteries and burial grounds.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-									
				OPERATIONAL PHASE	1				1									
<b>Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 19:</b> The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells,	The key components of the proposed project are described below:		Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Fragmentation of habitats.</li> <li>Establishment and spread of declared weeds and alien invader plants (operations).</li> </ul>		-	L	Yes	-									
shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from a watercourse;	Supporting Infrastructure		Air quality	<ul> <li>Air pollution due to the mining / prospecting activity and transport of the gravel to the designated areas.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-									
<b>Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 20:</b> "Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a prospecting right in terms of section 16 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources	- A control facility with basic services such as water and electricity will be constructed on the site		Soil	<ul> <li>Soil degradation, including erosion.</li> <li>Disturbance of soils and existing land use (soil compaction).</li> <li>Loss of agricultural potential (medium significance relative to agricultural potential of the site).</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-									
Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002), including— (a) associated infrastructure, structures and earthworks, directly related to prospecting of a mineral resource; or [including activities for which an exemption has been issued in terms of section 106 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)] (b) the primary processing of a petroleum resource including winning, extraction, classifying, concentrating or water removal; – Listing Notice 1 (GNR 327), Activity 27: "The clearance of an	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing gravel roads off the N7.</li> <li><u>Fencing</u> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing gravel roads off the N7.</li> <li><u>Fencing</u> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced off from the surrounding</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing gravel roads off the N7.</li> <li><u>Fencing</u> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing gravel roads off the N7.</li> <li><u>Fencing</u> - For health, safety and security reasons, the facility will be required to be fenced</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>approximate footprint 50m<sup>2</sup> or less. Other supporting infrastructure includes a site office and workshop area.</li> <li><u>Roads</u> – Access will be obtained from an existing</li> </ul>		Geology	<ul> <li>Collapsible soil.</li> <li>Seepage (shallow water table).</li> <li>Active soil (high soil heave).</li> <li>Erodible soil.</li> <li>The presence of undermined ground.</li> <li>Instability due to soluble rock.</li> <li>Steep slopes or areas of unstable natural slopes.</li> <li>Areas subject to seismic activity.</li> <li>Areas subject to flooding.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-
area of 1 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares of indigenous vegetation" Listing Notice 3, GNR324, Activity 12: "The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation. (g)					BIOPHYSI	Existing services infrastructure	<ul> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at a licensed landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the municipal sewerage system and the local sewage plant.</li> <li>Increased consumption of water, dust suppression.</li> </ul>			L	Yes	-						
Northern Cape: (ii) Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans;				Ground water	<ul> <li>Leakage of hazardous materials. The machinery on site require oils and fuel to function. Leakage of these oils and fuels can contaminate water supplies.</li> </ul>			L	Yes	-								
			Surface water	<ul> <li>Increase in storm water runoff. The development will potentially result in an increase in storm water run-off that needs to be managed to prevent soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams/wetlands).</li> <li>Leakage of hazardous materials. The machinery on site require oils and fuel to function. Leakage of these oils and fuels can contaminate water supplies.</li> </ul>		-	L	Yes	-									
	AL/ECONOMIC	SOCIAL/ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	<ul> <li>Job creation. Security guards will be required for 24 hours every day of the week.</li> <li>Skills development.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-									
			Visual landscape	<ul> <li>The proposed portions are used for livestock grazing and crop production which will still take place simultaneously with the prospecting activity, however this depends on the location of the activity.</li> </ul>	_		L	Yes	-									
		l Soc	Traffic volumes	Increase in vehicles collecting gravel for distribution.	-		S	Yes	-									
			Health & Safety	<ul><li>Air/dust pollution.</li><li>Road safety.</li></ul>	-		S	Yes	-									

Milnex CC: BAR262PR – BAR & EMPr: Environmental Authorisation Application of Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen for the proposed Prospecting Right for the prospecting of Diamonds in Kimberlite (DK) and Diamonds in Kimberlite Hopetown RD.

		Noise levels	The proposed development will result in noise pollution during the operational phase.	-		М	Yes	-		
		Tourism industry	<ul> <li>Since there are tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the decommissioning activities may have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>		N/A	N/A	N/A	-		
		Heritage resources	<ul> <li>It is not foreseen that the proposed activity will impact on heritage resources or vice versa.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-		
			DECOMMISSIONING PHASE							
- <u>Mine closure</u> During the mine closure the		Fauna & Flora	<ul> <li>Re-vegetation of exposed soil surfaces to ensure no erosion in these areas.</li> </ul>		÷	L	Yes	-		
Mine and its associated infrastructure will be		Air quality	Air pollution due to the increase of traffic of construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-		
dismantled.	MENT	Soil	<ul><li>Backfilling of all voids</li><li>Placing of topsoil on backfill</li></ul>		÷	L	Yes	-		
Rehabilitation of biophysical environment The biophysical	IVIRON	Geology	<ul> <li>It is not foreseen that the decommissioning phase will impact on the geology of the site or vice versa.</li> </ul>	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	-		
environment will be rehabilitated.	environment will be	Existing services infrastructure	<ul> <li>Generation of waste that need to be accommodated at the local landfill site.</li> <li>Generation of sewage that need to be accommodated by the municipal sewerage system and the local sewage plant.</li> <li>Increase in construction vehicles.</li> </ul>			S	Yes	-		
		Ground water	Pollution due to construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes	-		
		Surface water	<ul> <li>Increase in storm water run-off.</li> <li>Pollution of water sources due to soil erosion.</li> <li>Destruction of watercourses (pans/dams/streams/wetlands).</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-		
	SOCIAL/ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT	Local unemployment rate	Loss of employment.	-		L	Yes	-		
		MENT	MENT	Visual landscape	<ul> <li>Potential visual impact on visual receptors in close proximity to proposed facility.</li> </ul>	-		S	Yes	-
				U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U U	Traffic volumes	Increase in construction vehicles.	-		S	Yes
		Health & Safety	<ul> <li>Air/dust pollution.</li> <li>Road safety.</li> <li>Increased crime levels. The presence of mine workers on the site may increase security risks associated with an increase in crime levels as a result of influx of people in the rural area.</li> </ul>			L	Yes	-		
		AL/ECC	Noise levels	• The generation of noise as a result of construction vehicles, the use of machinery and people working on the site.	-		S	Yes	-	
		Tourism industry	<ul> <li>Since there are no tourism facilities in close proximity to the site, the decommissioning activities will not have an impact on tourism in the area.</li> </ul>		N/A	N/A	N/A	-		
		Heritage resources	<ul> <li>It is not foreseen that the decommissioning phase will impact on any heritage resources.</li> </ul>	-		L	Yes	-		

(N/A) No impact (+) Positive Impact (-) Negative Impact (S) Short Term (M) Medium Term (L) Long Term

# K. WHERE APPLICABLE, A SUMMARY OF THE FINDINGS AND IMPACTS MANAGEMENT MEASURES IDENTIFIED IN AN SPECIALIST REPORT COMPLYING WITH APPENDIX 6 OF THESE REGULATIONS AND AN INDICATION AS TO HOW THESE FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE FINAL REPORT;

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT (Mark with an X where applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIOS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED.
Terrestrial Biodiversity & Wetland Assessment	<ul> <li>According to the DFFE screening tool report in terms of National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), the site has the following sensitivities: <ul> <li>Animal Species Theme: Medium Sensitivity</li> <li>Aquatic Biodiversity Theme: Very High Sensitivity</li> <li>Plant Species Theme: Low Sensitivity</li> <li>Terrestrial Biodiversity Theme: Very High Sensitivity</li> </ul> </li> <li>Apost-screening site visit was therefore conducted to determine the accuracy of the generated information, and if the studies recommended should be conducted. After the site visit the following was concluded: <ul> <li>The site presented a High Sensitivity for the Animal Species Theme due to the vast presence of fauna and faunal habitats and the abundance of species observed on site. Species of conservation concern have a high probability of occurrence due to the lack of human disturbance on the study area.</li> <li>The Depressions presented a Medium-Low Sensitivity for the Aquatic Species Theme due to the Depressions being seasonally inundated, thus potentially harbouring aquatic biota (macroinvertebrates) during the rainy seasons. The Floodplain wetland presented a High-Medium Sensitivity for the Aquatic Species Theme due to minimal disturbances observed on site. Evidence of aquatic dependent organisms was abundant, therefore indicating that the Floodplain is a good habitat and feeding ground for a lot of organisms.</li> <li>The site presented a High Plant Species Sensitivity Theme. The Vegetation on site is mostly undisturbed with a few declared invader plant species, which mainly occur at the disturbed footprints around the farmhouses. No plant species of conservation concern was recorded.</li> </ul> </li> <li>The site has a Very High sensitivity from a terrestrial biodiversity perspective because the area is mostly undisturbed and presents habitat conditions suitable for a wide range of faunal species.</li> </ul>		Appendix 12

The information below concludes the Desktop findings supported by field verifications.         According to the National Threatened Ecosystem database (2011), no threatened ecosystems overlap with the study site.         According to the Northern Cape Critical biodiversity Areas and map (2016), the study area was observed to overlap with CBA1, CBA 2 and ESA areas.         According to the National Wetland Map5 Database, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2) HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).         The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).         Three protected tree species were recorded namely Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon and Vachellia erioloba. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.         The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered         For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       ElS       REC         Pepressions       23m       B       High       A/B Improve	The information below cont	aludae the Lleektee	findings our	norted by field	d varifications		
ecosystems overlap with the study site.       According to the Northern Cape Critical biodiversity Areas and map (2016), the study area was observed to overlap with CBA1, CBA 2 and ESA areas.         According to the National Wetland Map5 Database, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2) HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).         The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).         Three protected tree species were recorded namely <i>Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon</i> and <i>Vachellia erioloba</i> . Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.         The provincially protected plant species <i>Aloc claviflora</i> were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered         For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       ElS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B         High       A/B       Improve       A/B	<ul> <li>According to the</li> </ul>					nod	
<ul> <li>According to the Northern Cape Critical biodiversity Areas and map (2016), the study area was observed to overlap with CBA1, CBA 2 and ESA areas.</li> <li>According to the National Wetland Map5 Database, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2) HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).</li> <li>The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).</li> <li>Three protected tree species were recorded namely <i>Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon</i> and <i>Vachellia erioloba</i>. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.</li> <li>The provincially protected plant species <i>Aloe claviflora</i> were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered</li> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul>				III Ualabase (	2011), 110 tilleate	neu	
study area was observed to overlap with CBA1, CBA 2 and ESA areas.         According to the National Wetland Map5 Database, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2) HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).         The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).         Three protected tree species were recorded namely Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon and Vachellia erioloba. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.         The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered         For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B         Improve       B       High       A/B				ersity Areas	and map (2016)	the	
<ul> <li>According to the National Wetland Map5 Database, three (3) wetland types were expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2) HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).</li> <li>The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).</li> <li>Three protected tree species were recorded namely <i>Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon</i> and <i>Vachellia erioloba</i>. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.</li> <li>The provincially protected plant species <i>Aloe claviflora</i> were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered</li> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul>							
expected to occur on the study site. A site visit confirmed the presence of two (2)         HGM units. A grass Depression wetland and a Floodplain wetland (Orange River).         The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).         Three protected tree species were recorded namely Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon and Vachellia erioloba. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.         The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered         For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer         PER       30m         B       High         A/B		•				vere	
<ul> <li>The study area is not found in a Strategic Water Source Area (SWSA).</li> <li>Three protected tree species were recorded namely <i>Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon</i> and <i>Vachellia erioloba</i>. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.</li> <li>The provincially protected plant species <i>Aloe claviflora</i> were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered</li> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul>							
<ul> <li>Three protected tree species were recorded namely <i>Boscia albitrunca, Vachellia haematoxylon</i> and <i>Vachellia erioloba</i>. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.</li> <li>The provincially protected plant species <i>Aloe claviflora</i> were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered</li> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul>	HGM units. A gra	ss Depression wetl	land and a F	loodplain wet	land (Orange Riv	er).	
haematoxylon and Vachellia erioloba. Licenses will have to be obtained if any of these trees are to be removed.         • The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered       • For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         • Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         • Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B         High       A/B       MB       MB       MB							
these trees are to be removed.         The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered         For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B Improve         FP       30m       B       High       A/B							
<ul> <li>The provincially protected plant species Aloe claviflora were recorded on site. Relocation of these plants must be considered</li> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul> Classification           Scientific Buffer         PES         EIS         REC           Depressions         23m         B         High         A/B Improve           FP         30m         B         High         A/B	-		a. Licenses	will have to	be obtained if an	y of	
Relocation of these plants must be considered         • For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         • Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         • Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer         PES       EIS         Rec         Depressions       23m         B       High         A/B         Improve							
<ul> <li>For Avifaunal species potentially occurring on site, and that enjoy conservation status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.</li> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> </ul> Classification           Scientific Buffer         PES         EIS         REC           Depressions         23m         B         High         A/B improve           FP         30m         B         High         A/B				ciaviliora we	re recorded on	ale.	
status in the Eskom Red Data Book, kindly refer to Section 4.3.1(Table 9) for a species list.         •       Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         •       Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification       Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B Improve         FP       30m       B       High       A/B		•		site and the	t eniov conserva	tion	
species list.         •       Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.         •       Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:         Classification         Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS         Pepressions       23m       B       High         A/B       Improve         FP       30m       B       High							
<ul> <li>Based on the Reptile Atlas of Africa, the Frog Atlas of South Africa (ADU, 2019) and the DFFE Screening tool, no Herpetofauna SCC are expected to occur on site.</li> <li>Results for the wetland assessment are summarised in the table below:</li> <li>Classification</li> <li>Scientific Buffer</li> <li>PES</li> <li>EIS</li> <li>REC</li> <li>Depressions</li> <li>23m</li> <li>B</li> <li>High</li> <li>A/B Improve</li> <li>A/B</li> <li>FP</li> <li>A0m</li> <li>B</li> <li>High</li> </ul>			,				
Scientific Buffer       PES       EIS       REC         Depressions       23m       B       High       A/B       Improve         FP       30m       B       High       A/B       Improve		ptile Atlas of Africa,	the Frog Atl	as of South Af	rica (ADU, 2019)	and	
ClassificationScientific BufferPESEISRECDepressions23mBHighA/B ImproveFP30mBHighA/B							
Classification     Buffer     PES     EIS     REC       Depressions     23m     B     High     A/B Improve       FP     30m     B     High     A/B	<ul> <li>Results for the w</li> </ul>	etland assessment	are summar	rised in the tak	ole below:		
ClassificationBufferPESEISRECDepressions23mBHighA/BFP30mBHighA/B							
Depressions23mBHighA/B ImproveFP30mBHighA/B	Classification		PES	EIS	REC		
Depressions     23m     B     High     Improve       FP     30m     B     High     A/B		Duiler			A/D		
FP 30m B High A/B					A/B		
FP 30m B High	Depressions	23m	B	High			
Improve	Depressions	23m	В	High	Improve		
	· .				Improve A/B		
	FP	30m	В	High	Improve A/B Improve	سما	
The allocation of buffers/exclusion zones was in accordance with the wetlands PES as well as FIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with	FP The allocation of buffers/ex	30m xclusion zones was	B in accordar	High nce with the v	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as		
as EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed	B s in accordar I. Various po	High nce with the v tential impact	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated	with	
	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are	B in accordar I. Various po discussed	High nce with the v tential impact in the impact	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated	with	
as EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula	B s in accordar I. Various po discussed ttions (2017)	High nce with the v tential impact in the impact	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated t assessment sc	with ores	
as EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017).	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula The	B in accordar I. Various po discussed tions (2017) e impacts a	High here with the v tential impact in the impact issociated wi	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated t assessment sc th the prospecti	with ores	
as EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017). The impacts associated with the prospecting activities range from Medium-High to Very-Low prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting derived according to the an	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula The acti	B in accordar I. Various po discussed tions (2017) e impacts a ivities range	High here with the v tential impact in the impact issociated wi from Mediun	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated t assessment sc th the prospection n-High to Very-Lo	with ores ng w	
As EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017). The impacts associated with the prospecting activities range from Medium-High to Very-Low prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting derived according to the an	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula The acti prio	B s in accordant I. Various por discussed titions (2017) e impacts a ivities range or to mitigati	High High tential impact in the impact issociated wi from Mediun ion taking pla	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as s are associated assessment sc th the prospection h-High to Very-Luce. With mitigation wetlands PES as the prospection wetlands PES as the prospection the prospec	with pres ng w pn	
as EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with         the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores         derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017).         The impacts associated with the prospecting         activities range from Medium-High to Very-Low         prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation         fully implemented, the significance of most	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting derived according to the an	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula The acti prio fully	B s in accordar I. Various po discussed titons (2017) e impacts a ivities range or to mitigati y implement	High hce with the v tential impact in the impact issociated wi from Medium from Medium from taking pla ted, the sig	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as is are associated it assessment sc th the prospection -High to Very-Luce. With mitigation inificance of models	with pres ng w pn st	
As EIS. The allocated buffers can be reviewed. Various potential impacts are associated with the proposed prospecting activities and are discussed in the impact assessment scores derived according to the amended EIA Regulations (2017). The impacts associated with the prospecting activities range from Medium-High to Very-Low prior to mitigation taking place. With mitigation	FP The allocation of buffers/ex as EIS. The allocated buffe the proposed prospecting derived according to the an	30m xclusion zones was ers can be reviewed activities and are nended EIA Regula The acti ent fully imp	B a in accordant I. Various po discussed titions (2017) e impacts a ivities range or to mitigati y implement pacts can be	High hce with the v tential impact in the impact issociated wi from Medium from Medium from taking pla ted, the sig	Improve A/B Improve vetlands PES as is are associated it assessment sc th the prospection -High to Very-Luce. With mitigation inificance of models	with pres ng w pn st	

Mitigation Measures	Refer to Section 6.5	
measures discussed in the report are adh conducted outside of the recommende sensitivity of the area, it is recommende investigated as alternatives. Thereafte considered from an ecological conservation and decommissioning phases all recorn document should be taken into considerat be in place to rehabilitate the habitat for far	nent plan is implemented to ensure that all mitigation nered to. It is also important for the operations to be ed exclusion buffers. Given the high biodiversity ed that sites with lower biodiversity importance be r, the proposed prospecting operations can be on point of view. During the construction, operational mmendations made, and concerns raised in this ation. A good closure and rehabilitation plan should nunal and floral species and active alien and invasive Id take place in accordance with an Alien Invasive	
calcretes, the Dwyka Group (Karoo Super Group, Ventersdorp Supergroup). Upd underlain by is underlain by the calcrete, well as the Kalahari Group, Dwyka Group Formation (Platberg Group, Ventersdon Heritage Resources Information System surface limestone and Hardpan surface (Kalahari Group) and Dwyka Group is Moo It is therefore considered that the propose the palaeontological heritage of the area.	in by Quaternary sands, Tertiary to Quaternary group) as well as the Allanridge Formation (Platberg ated geology indicates that the development is surface limestone and Hardpan surface deposits as pup (Karoo Supergroup) as well as the Allanridge rp Supergroup). According to the South African n, the Palaeontological Sensitivity of the calcrete, e deposits is High, that of the Quaternary sands derate, while that of the Allanridge Formation is Low. ed prospecting will not lead to detrimental impacts on . The construction and operation of the project may development footprint is not considered sensitive in	Appendix 12
exposed by excavations the Chance Find manager in charge of these development ECO/site manager must report to SAHR Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 80	any phase of construction, either on the surface or d Protocol must be implemented by the ECO or site ts. Fossil discoveries ought to be protected and the A (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, 000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 at suitable mitigation (recording and collection) can	
	o further palaeontological heritage studies, ground equired pending the discovery of newly discovered	

CHANCE FIND PROTOCOL	
The following procedure will only be followed if fossils are uncovered during excavation.	
LEGISLATION	
Cultural Heritage in South Africa (includes all heritage resources) is protected by the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999) (NHRA). According to Section 3 of the Act, all Heritage resources include "all objects recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa, including archaeological and palaeontological objects and material, meteorites and rare geological specimens".	
Palaeontological heritage is unique and non-renewable and is protected by the NHRA and are the property of the State. It is thus the responsibility of the State to manage and conserve fossils on behalf of the citizens of South Africa. Palaeontological resources may not be excavated, broken, moved, or destroyed by any development without prior assessment and without a permit from the relevant heritage resources authority as per section 35 of the NHRA.	
A fossil is the naturally preserved remains (or traces thereof) of plants or animals embedded in rock. These organisms lived millions of years ago. Fossils are extremely rare and irreplaceable. By studying fossils, it is possible to determine environmental conditions that existed in a specific geographical area, millions of years ago.	
This informational document is intended for workmen and foremen on construction sites. It describes the actions to be taken when construction activities accidentally uncover fossil material.	
It is the responsibility of the Environmental Site Officer (ESO) or site manager of the project to train the workmen and foremen in the procedure to follow when a fossil is accidentally uncovered. In the absence of the ESO, a member of the staff must be appointed to be responsible for the proper implementation of the chance find protocol as not to compromise the conservation of fossil material.	

CHANCE FIND PROCEDURE	
<ul> <li>If a chance find is made the person responsible for the find must immediately stop working and all work that could impact that finding must cease in the immediate vicinity of the find.</li> </ul>	
The person who made the find must immediately <b>report</b> the find to his/her direct supervisor which in turn must report the find to his/her manager and the ESO or site manager. The ESO or site manager must report the find to the relevant Heritage Agency (South African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA). (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web:	
<ul> <li>www.sahra.orq.za). The information to the Heritage Agency must include photographs of the find, from various angles, as well as the GPS co-ordinates.</li> <li>A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage Agency within 24 hours of the find and must include the following: 1) date of the find; 2) a description of the discovery and a 3) description of the fossil and its context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS co-ordinates.</li> <li>Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery must be of high quality, in focus, accompanied by a scale. It is also important to have photographs of the vertical section (side) where the fossil was found.</li> <li>Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.</li> <li>The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage. No attempt should be made to remove material from their environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered by a plastic sheet or sand bags. The Heritage agency will also be able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the find.</li> <li>If the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be collected with extreme care by the ESO. Fossils finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from the rescue site.</li> <li>Once the Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may</li> </ul>	

Heritage Impact Assessment	A total of nine sites were recorded during the survey which include one graveyard (Site 6) and six historical farmhouse complexes and other historical structures (Sites 1, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 8) and two large rock art sites (Sites 2 and 9). The historical farmhouses and other associated structures mostly date to the late 1800s to early 1900s and are associated with early farming activities. However, some of the headstones in the graveyard date to early 1800s which indicate a possible earlier occupation window in area. Early maps confirm that by the late 19th century the farms were already well established. Please note that the Doctor's Kraal complex is associated with a veterinary service that was provided probably from the 1890s. Although most sites correlate or overlap, note that the survey conducted by Van Ryneveld (2013a) recorded a total of 27 sites. This adds to the high density of the distribution of heritage sites on the farm.	Appendix 12
	In this regard please note the following proposed mitigation measures: I Take note of the position of the existing heritage sites;	
	I A buffer zone of 50 metres should be maintained;	
	I The graveyard should be fenced off with a gate installed; and	
	I Care should be taken to prevent any indirect impacts on the historical structures.	
	It is therefore recommended, from a cultural heritage perspective that the proposed prospecting initiatives may proceed, dependent on adherence to the proposed mitigation measures.	

Commence A anarrand (Cita () airs histo				
		d other historical structures (Sites		
1, 3, 4, 5, 7 and 8) and two large rock a	art sites (Sites 2 and 9)			
	Without mitigation	With mitigation		
Prospecting Phase				
Probability	Definite (5)	Very Improbable (1)		
Duration	Permanent (5)	Short term (2)		
Extent	Limited to the site (1)	Limited to the site (1)		
Magnitude	Very High (10)	Minor (2)		
Significance of Impact	80 (High)	5 (Low)		
Status (positive or negative)	Negative	Positive		
Reversibility	Low	Low		
Irreplaceable loss of resources?	Yes	None		
Cumulative impacts and indirect impa	cts Prospecting phase may cau	se excessive vibrations.		
	1 21 5			
Can impacts be mitigated?		es) should be maintained during		
	prospecting developments			
Also, please note:				
If the exhumation and reburial of the graveyards are envisaged it will entail social consultation and permit application. Other legislative measures which may be pertinent include the				
Removal of Graves and Dead Bodies Ordinance (Ordinance No. 7 of 1925), Regulations Relating to the Management of Human Remains (GNR 363 of 22 May 2013) made in terms of the National Health Act No. 61 of 2003, Ordinance on Exhumations (Ordinance No. 12 of 1980) as well as any local and regional provisions, laws and by-laws that may be in place.				
1980) as well as any local and reg Note that unmarked graves are by o under the NHRA (Act No. 25 of 199	default regarded as older th			
Note that unmarked graves are by o	default regarded as older th 19, Section 36). cur below ground level. Sho	an 60 years and therefore falls uld archaeological artefacts o		

According to the DEA Screening Report, nine (9) specialist assessments have been identified for inclusion in the assessment report. Please see the table below for the list of these studies and also our response. Please refer to **Appendix 7**.

Specialist study according to DEA	Response
Screening tool	Kesholise

		We do not see a need for this study.			
		The land capability for the proposed area and surrounding area also falls withing Land in Class VII (7)			
Agriculture Impact Assessment		The Prospecting Work Programme (PWP) states 200 boreholes will be drilled [impact: 2m (length) x 2m (breath)] and 50 pits [3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth)] will be dug. This calculates to a disturbance of ± 0.11ha			
		The whole application area is 2291.7235 ha thus the 0.11ha disturbance is very small compared to the size of the application area.			
		Due to the low disturbance (±0.11 Ha over a 2291.7235 ha are) the impact is expected to be low The area will be concurrently rehabilitated. The prospecting activity will not disturb existing activities on the portions as both (existing activities and prospecting activities) can be done concurrently.			
	Animal Species Assessment				
Biodiversity	Aquatic Biodiversity Impact Assessment	A Terrestrial Biodiversity & Wetland Assessment has been conducted and included in Appendix 12 of this Report			
study	Plant Species				
	Assessment Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment				
	impact Assessment				
Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment		A Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment together with a Paleontological Desktop Assessment has been conducted and in <b>Appendix 12</b> of this Report			
Palaeontology	Impact Assessment				
Noise Impact A	Assessment	We do not see the need for this study as noise is limited to working hours.			
Radioactivity I	mpact Assessment	This study is not necessary since the process of mining Diamonds Alluvial, Diamonds General, Diamonds in Kimberlite and Diamonds does not have any radioactive effects.			

# L. ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT STATEMENT

# i) SUMMARY OF THE KEY FINDINGS

This section provides a summary of the assessment and conclusions drawn from the proposed prospecting area. In doing so, it draws on the information gathered as part of the environmental impact assessment process and the knowledge gained by the environmental consultant during the course of the process and presents an informed opinion on the environmental impacts associated with the proposed project. The following conclusions can be drawn for the proposed prospecting activity:

> Potential impacts on biodiversity:

According to the DEA Screening report the sensitivity of the proposed area is as follow:

- Plant Species theme sensitivity: Low throughout the study area
- Aquatic Biodiversity sensitivity: Very High on the proposed area where water bodies have been identified and low throughout most of the study area
- Terrestrial Biodiversity sensitivity: Very High on eastern part of the proposed area and low throughout the rest of the area
- Animal Species sensitivity: Medium throughout the area

It is expected that some vegetation might be lost but through implementing mitigation measures, no adverse impacts are expected. The application is for a prospecting right without bulk sampling.

The Prospecting Work Programme (PWP) states 200 boreholes will be drilled [impact: 2m (length) x 2m (breath)] and 50 pits [3m (length) x 2m (breath) x 4m (depth)] will be dug. This calculates to a disturbance of  $\pm$  0.11ha

The whole application area is 2291.7235 ha thus the 0.11ha disturbance is very small compared to the size of the application area.

Due to the low disturbance ( $\pm 0.11$  Ha over a 2291.7235 ha are) the impact is expected to be low The area will be concurrently rehabilitated. The prospecting activity will not disturb existing activities on the portions as both (existing activities and prospecting activities) can be done concurrently.

> Potential impact on Archaeological artifacts and Palaeontological resources:

According to the DEA Screening Report the Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme Sensitivity is low with some small areas classified as higb and the Paleontology Theme Sensitivity of a certain area op the proposed area falls within high sensitivity but is mostly dominated by a medium sensitivity.

Cultural Heritage in South Africa (includes all heritage resources) is protected by the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) (NHRA). According to Section 3 of the Act, all Heritage resources include "all objects recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa, including archaeological and palaeontological objects and material, meteorites and rare geological specimens".

If such resources are found during the mining or development activities, they shall not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resource Authority, which means that before such sites are disturbed by development it is incumbent on the developer to ensure that a heritage impact assessment is done and the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority and SAHRA must be contacted immediately and work must stop.

If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:

- NHRA 38(4)c(i) If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)c(ii) If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)e The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources
  are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on
  the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly
  discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue
  operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;

If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the **Chance Find Protocol** must be implemented by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: <u>www.sahra.org.za</u>) so that mitigation can be carry out by a paleontologist.

Potential impacts on land use:

According to Figure 20 and Figure 21 the proposed area is mostly covered by Low schrubland, Grassland, Ticket/Dense Bush and some bare non vegetated areas. According to the Landcover Map, the area is mostly natural (Figure 20 or 21). The property also borders the Orange River on its Eastern boundaries.

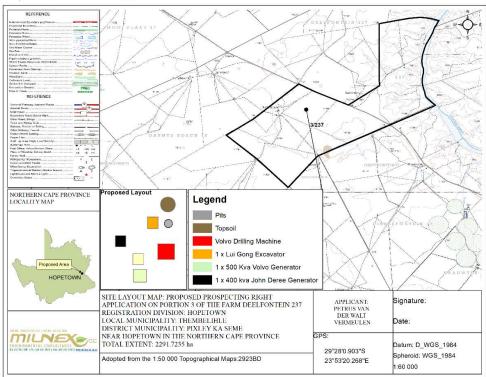
The activity will be subject to concurrent rehabilitation. The prospecting activity will not disturb existing activities on the portions as both (existing activities and prospecting activities) can be done concurrently.

- Potential social impacts: The presence of prospecting workers poses a potential risk to family structures and social networks. While the presence of prospecting workers does not in itself constitute a social impact, the manner in which workers conduct themselves can impact on local communities. The most significant negative impact is associated with the disruption of existing family structures and social networks.
- Potential negative impacts: (noise, dust, soil degradation, storm water, traffic, health and safety) associated with the operation of the facility are expected to be of low high impact, of medium terms and site specific. These can be mitigated or negated through the implementation of practical and appropriate mitigation measures.
- Positive impacts: The prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) without bulk sampling, may result in socio-economic benefit to the area.

All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the migratory measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B.

#### ii) FINAL SITE MAP

Provide a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed overall activity and its associated structures and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers.



#### Refer to Site layout Map attached in Appendix 4.

Figure 23: Site Plan

# iii) SUMMARY OF THE POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE IMPLICATIONS AND RISKS OF THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY AND IDENTIFIED ALTERNATIVES

There is regional socio economic benefits due to the Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) being prospected in the Northern Cape province and greater knowledge is gained on the mineralogy of South Africa. All possible negative impacts and risks that have been identified in this report can be effectively mitigated and managed by implementing the mitigation measures as set out in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) attached in Part B. Significant adverse social environmental impacts are anticipated.

M. PROPOSED IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND THE IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES FOR INCLUSION IN THE EMPR (Based on the assessment and where applicable the recommendations from specialist reports, the recording of proposed impact management objectives, and the impact management outcomes for the development for inclusion in the EMPr as well as for inclusion as conditions of authorisation)

Management objectives include:

- > Ensure that the prospecting activity does not cause pollution to the environment or harm to persons.
- Minimise production of waste.

- All prospecting activities must be conducted in a manner that minimises noise impact, litter, environmental degradation and health hazards i.e. injuries.
- > The mine must be kept neat and tidy during waste handling to prevent unsightliness and accidents.

Expected outcomes include:

- > Minimum impacts on the environment as a result of prospecting
- > Compliance with legislative requirements.
- Mine is neat and tidy and well managed.

#### FINAL PROPOSED ALTERNATIVES

(Provide an explanation for the final layout of the infrastructure and activities on the overall site as shown on the final site map together with the reasons why they are the final proposed alternatives which respond to the impact management measures, avoidance, and mitigation measures identified through the assessment)

This alternative asks the question, if there is not, from an environmental perspective, a more suitable location for the proposed activity. Due to the expected mineral resources, **Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** would like to potentially mine for Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) on Portion 3 of the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD. The property is also owned by the Deelfontein Trust, of Which Mr Vermeulen is a Trustee therefore there will be no other alternative (i.e. to facilitate the movement of machinery, equipment, infrastructure).

### N. ASPECTS FOR INCLUSION AS CONDITIONS OF AUTHORISATION.

Any aspects which have not formed part of the EMPr that must be made conditions of the Environmental Authorisation

- The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- > A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- > Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.
- **O. DESCRIPTION OF ANY ASSUMPTIONS, UNCERTAINTIES AND GAPS IN KNOWLEDGE.** (Which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed)

The uncertainties in results are mostly related to the availability of information, time available to gather the relevant information as well as the sometimes-subjective nature of the assessment methodology. If the authority feels that specialists' studies need to be conducted, such will be corresponded to the applicant.

### P. REASONED OPINION AS TO WHETHER THE PROPOSED ACTIVITY SHOULD OR SHOULD NOT BE AUTHORISED

#### Reasons why the activity should be authorized or not.

The option of not approving the activities will result in a significant loss of possible valuable minerals being exploited and all economic benefits will be lost. Considering that most of the impacts are rated as low, it is the opinion of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner that the Authorization may be granted

# Q. CONDITIONS THAT MUST BE INCLUDED IN THE AUTHORISATION

- > The operational activities and relevant rehabilitation of disturbed areas should be monitored against the improved EMPr and all other relevant environmental legislation.
- > A copy of the EMP should be made available onsite at all times.
- > Implementation of the proposed mitigation measures set out in the EMPr.
- > All specialist reports are binding

The EMPr should be binding on all managers and contractors operating/utilizing the site.

#### Period for which the Environmental Authorisation is required.

For a minimum of 5 years.

#### R. UNDERTAKING

Confirm that the undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Basic assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

The undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Environmental Impact Assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

#### I, Christiaan Baron (EAP) herewith confirms

- A. the correctness of the information provided in the reports
- B. the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&APs ;
- **C.** the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant; And
- D. the acceptability of the project in relation to the finding of the assessment and level of mitigation proposed;

Signature of the environmental assessment practitioner:

#### Milnex CC

Name of company:

#### 06/10/2022

Date:

## S. FINANCIAL PROVISION

State the amount that is required to both manage and rehabilitate the environment in respect of rehabilitation.

# XXXXXX

#### i) Explain how the aforesaid amount was derived.

The closure cost estimate provided above is aligned with the Financial Provision Regulations. The amount was calculated by Milnex CC.

#### **Financial Guarantee**

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed by **Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen**, will be submitted to the department on request

#### **Rehabilitation Fund**

**Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.

#### ii) Motivation for the deviation.

Not applicable

## T. OTHER INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

# COMPLIANCE WITH THE PROVISIONS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) READ WITH SECTION 24 (3) (A) AND (7) OF THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT ACT (ACT 107 OF 1998). THE EIA REPORT MUST INCLUDE THE:

i. Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person. (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or prospecting on any directly affected person including the landowner, lawful occupier, or, where applicable, potential beneficiaries of any land restitution claim, attach the investigation report as Appendix 2.19.1 and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6.and 2.12.herein).

The following impacts may be regarded as community impacts:

- Increased noise levels
- Potential water and soil pollution impacts.
- Potential loss of fauna and flora.
- Increased vehicle activity.
- Increased dust levels.
- Increase in water consumption and possible depletion of groundwater resources.
- Potential visual impacts.

Indirect socio-economic benefits are expected to be associated with the creation of employment.

ii. Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act. (Provide the results of Investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or prospecting on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) with the exception of the national estate contemplated in section 3(2)(*i*)(vi) and (vii) of that Act, attach the investigation report as Appendix 2.19.2 and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6.and 2.12.herein).

According to the DEA Screening Report the proposed area falls within low Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme Sensitivity with a small area classified as high and certain areas fall withing medium to high Paleontology Theme Sensitivity.

Cultural Heritage in South Africa (includes all heritage resources) is protected by the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999) (NHRA). According to Section 3 of the Act, all Heritage resources include "all objects recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa, including archaeological and palaeontological objects and material, meteorites and rare geological specimens".

If such resources are found during the mining or development activities, they shall not be disturbed without a permit from the relevant heritage resource Authority, which means that before such sites are disturbed by development it is incumbent on the developer to ensure that a heritage impact assessment is done and the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority and SAHRA must be contacted immediately and work must stop.

If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance is found during the construction and operational phase of the mine the following applies:

- NHRA 38(4)c(i) If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)c(ii) If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- NHRA 38(4)e The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources
  are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on
  the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly
  discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue
  operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;

If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the **Chance Find Protocol** must be implemented by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za) so that mitigation can be carry out by a paleontologist.

## **Chance Find Procedure**

- If a chance find is made the person responsible for the find must immediately stop working and all work that could impact that finding must cease in the immediate vicinity of the find.
- The person who made the find must immediately report the find to his/her direct supervisor which in turn must report the find to his/her manager and the ESO or site manager. The ESO or site manager must report the find to the relevant Heritage Agency (South African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA). (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za). The information to the Heritage Agency must include photographs of the find, from various angles, as well as the GPS co-ordinates.

- A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage Agency within 24 hours of the find and must include the following: 1) date of the find; 2) a description of the discovery and a 3) description of the fossil and its context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS co-ordinates.
- Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery must be of high quality, in focus, accompanied by a scale. It is also important to have photographs of the vertical section (side) where the fossil was found.

Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.

- The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage. No attempt should be made to remove material from their environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered by a plastic sheet or sandbags. The Heritage agency will also be able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the find.
- In the event that the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be collected with extreme care by the ESO (site manager). Fossils finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from the rescue site.
- Once Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may continue with the development on the affected area.

# U. OTHER MATTERS REQUIRED IN TERMS OF SECTIONS 24(4)(A) AND (B) OF THE ACT.

(the EAP managing the application must provide the competent authority with detailed, written proof of an investigation as required by section 24(4)(b)(i) of the Act and motivation if no reasonable or feasible alternatives, as contemplated in sub-regulation 22(2)(h), exist. The EAP must attach such motivation as Appendix 4).

From a local perspective, the prospecting of Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds (Kimberlite) & Diamonds (DIA) including associated infrastructure on Portion 3 of the Farm Deelfontein 237, Registration Division: Hopetown RD, is preferred because the geological formation supports the possibility that the minerals applied for could be found on the proposed area.

#### PART B

#### ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT

- 1) Draft environmental management programme.
  - A) DETAILS OF THE EAP
    - i) The EAP who prepared the report
    - ii) Expertise of the EAP

Name of Practitioner	Qualifications	Contact details
Christiaan Baron	Master's Degree in Environmental Management (refer to Appendix 1) Registered EAP (EAPASA) <b>Reg No: 2020/2639</b>	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925 Fax No. : (053) 963 2009 e-mail address: <u>christiaan@milnex-sa.co.za</u>

Contact details of other	Qualifications	Contact details		
	Honours Degree in Environmental Science	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925		
Lizanne Esterhuizen	(refer to Appendix 1)	Fax No. : (053) 963 2009		
		e-mail address: lizanne@milnex-sa.co.za		
	Honours Degree in Environmental Science	Tel No.: (018) 011 1925		
Andile Nxumalo		Fax No. : (053) 963 2009		
	(refer to Appendix 1)	e-mail address: andile.grant@milnex-sa.co.za		

B) DESCRIPTION OF THE ASPECTS OF THE ACTIVITY (Confirm that the requirement to describe the aspects of the activity that are covered by the draft environmental management programme is already included in PART A, section (1)(h) herein as required).

It is hereby confirmed that the requirements to describe the aspects of the activity that are required by the EMP is already included in Part A, section 1(h).

## C) COMPOSITE MAP

(Provide a map (Attached as an Appendix) at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that any areas that should be avoided, including buffers)

Refer to Locality Map, attached as Appendix 3.

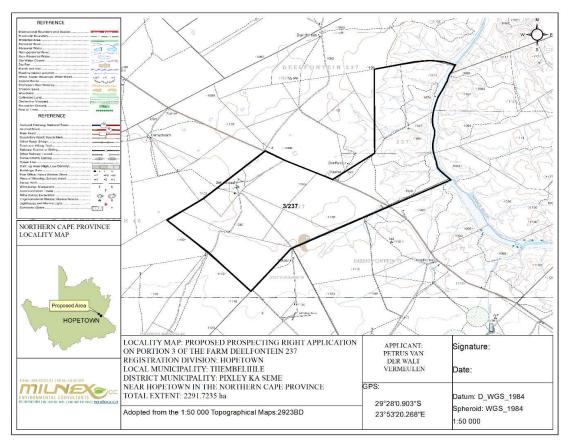


Figure 24: Locality Map

i.

## D) DESCRIPTION OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES INCLUDING MANAGEMENT STATEMENTS

**Determination of closure objectives.** (ensure that the closure objectives are informed by the type of environment described in 2.4 herein)

Closure objectives for the Prospecting Right will aim to ensure that the residual post-closure impacts be minimized and be acceptable to relevant parties. To achieve these closure objectives, the following will be implemented:

- All prospecting related infrastructure, foundations and concrete areas will be decommissioned, removed from the site and appropriately disposed of. Reclaimable structures such as metal, electrical installations or equipment will be sold for re-use or as scrap.
- All disturbed areas within the site not already vegetated will be re-vegetated with appropriate indigenous, ecologically adapted species appropriate to the area and the final land use as soon as possible after operation ceases. Progress of vegetation growth/establishment, stability and drainage/erosion will be monitored and, in the event of adverse trends being identified, corrective measures will be implemented.
- Vegetation monitoring will consider, inter alia, the establishment of perennial ground cover and infestation by alien invasive plant species. The encroachment of indigenous vegetation into the area will be used as an indication of a stable, selfsustaining vegetation cover with little risk of retrogressing to a situation where are and water pollution may occur.

- Final landforms must be resilient to perturbation and also be self-sustaining to obviate/limit further/ongoing interventions and maintenance by Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen. The remaining impacts be of an acceptable nature with minimal deterioration over time.
- The final outcome of the mine site rehabilitation would be productive systems, that will ensure the area will be returned to its natural state as far as possible.
- Environmental and human quality of life, including health and safety requirements in general, would not be compromised; and
- Closure is achieved in an efficient and cost-effective manner as possible and with minimum socioeconomic changes.

The above goal is underpinned by more specific objectives listed below.

## 1. Upfront planning/development

To provide overall guidance and direction to closure planning and/or the implementation of progressive closure measures over the remaining over the prospecting life.

#### 2. Physical stability

To ensure that surface infrastructure and prospecting residue and/or disturbances that are present at processing plant decommissioning will be removed and/or stabilised in a manner that these will not compromise post-closure land use and be sustainable long-term landforms.

- Closure, removal and disposal of all surface infrastructure that has no beneficial post-closure use.
- Shaping and vegetating the remaining earth embankments, trenches, etc. to stabilise slopes and integrate with surrounding topography.

#### 3. Environmental quality

To ensure that local environmental quality is not adversely affected by possible physical effects arising from prospecting operations and the prospecting site after closure. This will be achieved by:

- Avoiding and/or limiting the following during prospecting operations which could result in adverse effects that could not be readily addressed and/or mitigated at mine closure.
  - Dust fall-out areas surrounding the prospecting site.
  - Wash-off and/or mobilisation of chemically contaminated soils and sediments from the prospecting site that could have long term adverse effects on local aquatic health and/or other water uses.
  - Possible shallow groundwater contamination adversely affecting the quality of the local water resource and its beneficial use.
- Limiting the potential for dust generation on the rehabilitated prospecting site that could cause nuisance and/or health effects to surrounding landowners;
- Limiting the possible adverse water quality and quantity effects arising from the rehabilitated prospecting site to ensure that long term beneficial use of local resources is not compromised;
- Conducting soil clean-up/remediation to ensure that the planned land use could be implemented and maintained;

## 4. Health and safety

To limit the possible health and safety treats due to terrain hazards to humans and animals utilizing the rehabilitated prospecting site after closure by:

- Demonstrating through upfront soil testing that any resultant inorganic and organic pollution present on the site is acceptable;
- Removal of potential contaminants such as hydrocarbons and chemicals off site;
- Shaping of embankments and trenches to safe slopes and reintegrating of these into surrounding topography.
- Ensuring that the environmental quality as reflected above is achieved.

## 5. Land capability / land use

To ensure that the required land capability to achieve and support the planned land use can be achieved over the prospecting site by:

- Clean-up and reclamation of contaminated soil areas in order not to compromise the above land use planning earmarked for implementation;
- To ensure that the overall rehabilitated prospecting site is free draining

Transferring prospecting related surface infrastructure to third parties for beneficial use after closure.

## 6. Aesthetic quality

To ensure that the rehabilitated prospecting site will display, at a minimum, an acceptable aesthetic appearance that would not compromise the planned land use by leaving behind:

- A prospecting area that is properly cleared-up with no fugitive/scattered waste piles
- Rehabilitated prospecting area that is free draining and disturbed areas that are suitably vegetated.
- Rehabilitated prospecting residues that are suitably landscaped, blending with the surrounding environment as far as possible.
- Shaped and rehabilitated terrace and hard stand areas, roughly emulating the local natural surface topography.

## 7. Landscape viability

To create a landscape that is self-sustaining and over time will evolve/converge to the desired ecosystem structure, function and composition by:

- Conducing surface profiling, with associated material movement optimisation, to obtain a landscape resembling the natural landscapes to support the succession trajectory towards a climax ecological system.
- Establishing woody patches and create "rough and loose" areas for pioneer specie establishment around the respective patches.
- Establishing pioneer species as follows:
- Collected and prepared seeds for broad casting;
- Seedlings grown on on-site nursery;
- Cuttings collected from surrounding veld areas;
- Conducting rehabilitation monitoring and corrective action as required.

#### 8. Biodiversity

To encourage, where appropriate, the re-establishment of native vegetation on the rehabilitated mine site such the terrestrial biodiversity is largely re-instated over time, by:

- Stabilising disturbed areas to prevent erosion in the short- to medium term until a suitable vegetation cover has established; and
- Establishing viable self-sustaining vegetation communities of local fauna, as far as possible.

Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure.

The Rehabilitation & Closure Plan is attached as Appendix 10.

Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline.

# XXXXX

(a) Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined.

## Financial Guarantee

The financial guarantee for the rehabilitation for land disturbed by Mr Petrus van Der Walt Vermeulen will be submitted

#### **Rehabilitation Fund**

Mr Petrus van Der Walt Vermeulen will also make provision for rehabilitation during closure by establishing a rehabilitation trust.

# E) IMPACTS TO BE MITIGATED IN THEIR RESPECTIVE PHASES

#### Measures to rehabilitate the environment affected by the undertaking of any listed activity

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
Activities		of disturbance		STANDARDS	
(E.g. For prospecting - drill site, site		(volumes, tonnages			Describe the time period when the measures
camp, ablution facility, accommodation,	(of operation in	and hectares or m <sup>2</sup> )	(describe how each of the recommendations in		in the environmental management programme
equipment storage, sample storage, site	which activity will	and neclares of m )	herein will remedy the cause of pollution or	(A description of how	must be implemented Measures must be
			•	· ·	
office, access route etcetc	take place.		degradation and migration of pollutants)	each of the	implemented when required.
	01-11-			recommendations	With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this
E.g. For mining,- excavations, blasting,	State;			herein will comply with	must take place at the earliest opportunity.
stockpiles, discard dumps or dams,	Planning and			any prescribed	.With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state
Loading, hauling and transport, Water	design,			environmental	either:
supply dams and boreholes,	Pre-Construction'			management standards	Upon cessation of the individual activity
accommodation, offices, ablution, stores,	Construction,			or practices that have	Or.
workshops, processing plant, storm water	Operational,			been identified by	Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling
control, berms, roads, pipelines, power	Rehabilitation,			Competent Authorities)	or prospecting as the case may be.
lines, conveyors, etcetcetc.)	Closure, Post				
	closure).				
Clearance of vegetation	Pitting &	2291.7235ha - 200	5 1 1	Compliance with Duty of	
	drilling phase -	boreholes and 50	manner, as and when required.	Care as detailed within	
	(construction and	pits: 3m (length) x		NEMA	
	operation phase)	2m (breath) x 4m	months must not be cleared to reduce erosion		
		(depth).	risks.		
			3. The area to be cleared must be clearly		
		Concurrent	demarcated and this footprint strictly		
		backfilling will take	maintained.		
		place in order to	4. Spoil that is removed from the site must be		
		rehabilitate.	removed to an approved spoil site or a licensed		
			landfill site.		
			5. The necessary silt fences and erosion control		
			measures must be implemented in areas where		
			these risks are more prevalent.		

Construction of roads (if any)	Pitting & drilling phase - (construction and operation phase)		1.	Planning of access routes to the site for construction/prospecting purposes shall be done in conjunction with the Contractor and the Landowner. All agreements reached should be documented and no verbal agreements should be made. The Contractor shall clearly mark all access roads. Roads not to be used shall be marked with a "NO ENTRY for prospecting vehicles" sign.	Compliance with Duty of Care as detailed within NEMA	Duration of operations on the prospecting activities.
			2. 3.	Construction routes and required access roads must be clearly defined. Damping down of the un-surfaced roads must be implemented to reduce dust and nuisance.		
			4.	Soils compacted by construction/prospecting activities shall be deep ripped to loosen compacted layers and re-graded to even running levels.		
			5.	The contractor must ensure that damage caused by related traffic from a gravel road is repaired continuously. The costs associated with the repair must be borne by the contractor;		
			6.	Dust suppression measures must be implemented for heavy vehicles such as wetting of gravel roads on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport the gravel are fitted with tarpaulins or covers;		
			7.	All vehicles must be road-worthy and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits.		
Prospecting without bulk sampling for	Pitting &	2291.7235ha - 200	1.	The Contractor should, prior to the	Compliance with Duty of	Duration of operations on the mine
Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General),	drilling phase -	boreholes and 50		commencement of earthworks determine the	Care as detailed within	
Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite) – Soils	(construction and	pits: 3m (length) x		average depth of topsoil (If topsoil exists), and	NEMA	
and geology	operation phase)	2m (breath) x 4m		agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of		
		(depth).		topsoil should be stripped from areas affected		

			-			
				by construction and related activities prior to the		
		Concurrent		commencement of major earthworks. This		
		backfilling will take		should include the building footprints, working		
		place in order to		areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be		
		rehabilitate.		reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed		
				areas.		
			2.	Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and		
				subsoil or any other material, during stripping.		
			3.	The topsoil must be conserved on site in and		
				around the pit/trench area.		
			4.	Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area		
				should be stockpiled separately to be returned		
				for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.		
			5.	If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or		
				heavy rain, they should be covered either by		
				vegetation or geofabric, depending on the		
				duration of the project. Stockpiles may further		
				be protected by the construction of berms,		
				trenches or low brick walls around their bases.		
			6.	Stockpiles should be kept clear of weeds and		
				alien vegetation growth by regular weeding.		
			7.	Where contamination of soil is expected,		
				analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to		
				determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof		
				from an approved waste disposal site where		
				contaminated soils are dumped if and when a		
				spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and		
				given to the project manager.		
			8.	The impact on the geology will be permanent.		
			.	There is no mitigation measure.		
Prospecting without bulk sampling for	Pitting &	2291.7235ha - 200	1.	The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to	Compliance with Duty of	Duration of operations on the prospecting
Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General),	drilling phase -	boreholes and 50		the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to	Care as detailed within	area
Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite)	(construction and	pits: 3m (length) x		within standard working hours in order to reduce	NEMA	
	operation phase)	2m (breath) x 4m		disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the		
		(depth).		development.		
		(00001).		aoroiophiona		

	2.		
Concurrent		facilities should be located well away from noise	
backfilling will take		sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts	
place in order to		are made available by the Contractor(s), the	
rehabilitate.		sites must be evaluated in detail and specific	
		measures designed in to the system.	
	3.	Truck traffic should be routed away from noise	
		sensitive areas, where possible.	
	4.	Noise levels must be kept within acceptable	
		limits.	
	5.	Noisy operations should be combined so that	
	-	they occur where possible at the same time.	
	6.	Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection	
	••	gear.	
	7.	5	
	••	hours.	
	8.	Noise from labourers must be controlled.	
	9.	Noise suppression measures must be applied	
	5.	to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in	
		good working order and where appropriate fitted	
		with silencers which are kept in good working	
		order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be	
		in good working order, the Contractor may be	
		instructed to remove the offending vehicle or	
	40	machinery from the site.	
	10.	. The Contractor must take measures to	
		discourage labourers from loitering in the area	
		and causing noise disturbance. Where possible	
		labour shall be transported to and from the site	
		by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the	
		Contractors own transport.	
	11.	. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of	
		processing plants.	
	12.	. Applying regular and thorough maintenance	
		schedules to equipment and processes. An	
1			

increase in noise emission levels very often is a	
sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a	
machine.	

# IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES

(A description of impact management outcomes, identifying the standard of impact management required for the aspects contemplated in paragraph ();

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS	PHASE	MITIGATION	STANDARD TO BE
(whether listed or not listed).		AFFECTED	In which impact is anticipated	ТҮРЕ	ACHIEVED
(E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles,	(e.g. dust, noise, drainage		· ·		
discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling	surface disturbance, fly		(e.g. Construction,	(modify, remedy, control, or stop)	(Impact avoided, noise
and transport, Water supply dams and	rock, surface water		commissioning,	through	levels, dust levels,
boreholes, accommodation, offices,	contamination,		operational	(e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control,	rehabilitation standards,
ablution, stores, workshops, processing	groundwater		Decommissioning,	dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting	end use objectives) etc.
plant, storm water control, berms, roads,	contamination, air		closure, post-	controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity	
pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etcetcetc.).	pollution etcetc)		closure)	etc. etc)	
etcetcetc.j.				E.g.	
				<ul> <li>Modify through alternative method.</li> </ul>	
				Control through noise control	
				Control through management and monitoring	
				Remedy through rehabilitation	
Changing the physical structure within a	Construction:	Fauna & flora	(construction and	Other than approved and authorised structures, no	Minimisation of impacts to
water resource (habitat)	Infrastructure		operation phase)	other development or maintenance infrastructure is	acceptable limits
	development within			allowed within the delineated watercourse and	
	<ul><li>watercourses</li><li>Loss of vegetation</li></ul>			riparian areas or their associated buffer zones.	
	Erosion			Alien and invasive vegetation control should take	
				place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.	
	Operational:			Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy	
	Excavation from the			season and take immediate corrective action where	
	watercourses leading			needed.	
	to degraded river channels.			No stockpiling should take place within a	
	channels.     Removal of substrate			watercourse or the calculated buffers.	
	within wetlands			All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored	
	<ul> <li>Clearing of vegetation</li> </ul>			on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be	
	- vegetation loss			surrounded by bunds.	

	<ul> <li>Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> <li><u>Decommissioning:</u> <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>No maintenance within watercourses must be conducted.</li> <li>Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated or naturally vegetated areas.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the wetland systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that wetland structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the systems at pre-prospecting levels. All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> </ul>
Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity	Construction:         • Vegetation clearance causing sedimentation         • Earthworks activities         • Disturbance of soil surface and runoff characteristics         • Erosion         Operational:         • Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.         • Removal of substrate within wetlands         • Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss         • Loss of biodiversity         • Vehicles driving in and through watercourses	<ul> <li>Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise sedimentation of the downstream areas.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> </ul>

	Decommissioning:         • Damage to vegetated areas         areas         • Ineffective rehabilitation measures         Vehicles driving in and through watercourses	<ul> <li>Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent erosion and pollution.</li> <li>Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction must be implemented immediately upon completion of construction.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the larger riparian systems at pre-prospecting levels.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with significant flood hazards.</li> </ul>
Alteration of water quality (surface and groundwater) and soil pollution	Construction:         • Runoff from road surfaces         • Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons         Operational:         • Maintenance of vehicles and machinery         • Runoff from road surfaces         • Discharge of sewage         • Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons	<ul> <li>Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent hydrocarbon pollution.</li> <li>All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed of.</li> <li>Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible throughout the site.</li> <li>All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the buffer areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers must be regularly inspected for early leak detection.</li> <li>Littering must be prevented by effective site management and the provision of bins.</li> <li>Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside of the delineated buffer zones.</li> <li>An emergency spill procedure should be developed and implemented.</li> </ul>

	<ul> <li>Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> <li>Decommissioning:         <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Stockpiles must be located away from channels, wetlands and drainage lines.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>
	through watercourses	
Loss of terrestrial habitat	Construction:         • Clearing of vegetation         - vegetation loss         Operational:         • Removal of substrate         within watercourses         • Clearing of vegetation         during prospecting         operations         Decommissioning:         • Damage to vegetated         areas         • Ineffective         rehabilitation         measures	<ul> <li>Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation.</li> <li>It is recommended that areas to be developed be specifically demarcated so that during the construction phase, only the demarcated areas be impacted upon (including fencing off the defined project area) and preventing movement of workers into natural areas.</li> <li>The duration of the prospecting should be minimised to as short term as possible, in order to reduce the period of disturbance on fauna and flora.</li> <li>Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed or used as an area for dumping of waste.</li> <li>As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> </ul>

		<ul> <li>All staff and visitors to the site must undergo an induction process and must be made aware of the sensitive nature of the environment and floral species which occur there.</li> <li>The area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are indigenous to the exact vegetation types.</li> <li>Rehabilitation measures that are implemented must be continually monitored to ensure that proper succession has occurred and that there is no erosion occurring.</li> <li>An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>
Loss of Aquatic Biota	Construction:         • Runoff from road surfaces         • Sedimentation         • Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons         Operational:         • Maintenance of vehicles and machinery         • Runoff from road surfaces         • Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons         • Excavation from the watercourses and the	Biomonitoring of aquatic organisms within the wetland systems is essential.

	release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils Removal of substrate within wetlands Sedimentation	
Loss of Terrestrial Fauna	Construction and Operational: • Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation • Excessive noise disturbances • Illegal hunting • Habitat fragmentation destruction • Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas	<ul> <li>Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a suitable location beyond the extent of the development footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the handling and relocation of animals.</li> <li>Fencing should be erected around the project area to prevent workers and members of the public from entering the surrounding environments. This fence should have small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.</li> <li>Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.</li> <li>Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species be encountered during the construction, operation and decommissioning activities, these should be relocated to natural areas in the vicinity. Any sensitive fauna that are inadvertently killed</li> </ul>

		<ul> <li>during earthmoving operations should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.</li> <li>No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.</li> <li>Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from disturbance.</li> <li>General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed or killed and allowed free movement away from the area.</li> <li>Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.</li> </ul>
Loss of Terrestrial Flora	Construction and         Operational:         • Vegetation clearance         • Vehicles driving         through natural         vegetated areas         Habitat fragmentation and         destruction	<ul> <li>Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species.</li> <li>Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from the relevant authority.</li> </ul>
Introduction and spread of alien vegetation	Construction:         • Clearing of vegetation         Operational:         • Removal of substrate within watercourses         • Clearing of vegetation during prospecting operations         • Vehicles driving in and through watercourses	<ul> <li>Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species present within the study site. These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond.</li> <li>An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>

	<ul> <li>Decommissioning:         <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> </li> </ul>			<ul> <li>Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species.</li> <li>No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage and wetlands areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>Monitoring and eradication of invasive plant species should be continued five years after decommissioning.</li> </ul>
Prospecting without bulk sampling for Diamond (Alluvial), Diamond (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite)	Loss of topsoil	Soil	(construction and operation phase)	<ol> <li>The Contractor should, prior to the commencement of earthworks determine the average depth of topsoil, and agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of topsoil should be stripped from areas affected by construction and related activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This should include the building footprints, working areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</li> <li>Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and subsoil or any other material, during stripping.</li> <li>The topsoil must be conserved on site in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area should be stockpiled separately to be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or heavy rain, they should be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duration of the project. Stockpiles may further be protected by the construction of berms or low brick walls around their bases.</li> <li>Stockpiles should be kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by regular weeding.</li> <li>Where contamination of soil is expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof from an approved</li> </ol>

			•	waste disposal site where contaminated soils are dumped if and when a spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and given to the project manager. Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for prospecting purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all the records below. Record the GPS coordinates of each area. Record the date of topsoil stripping. Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled. Record the date of cessation prospecting activities at the particular site. Photograph the area on cessation of prospecting activities. Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil. Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and evaluate progress of restoration over time.	
Erosion	Soil Air Water	(construction and operation phase)	2. 3.	An effective system of run-off control should be implemented, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion. Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-off control system and specifically records the occurrence of any erosion on site or downstream. Implement an effective system of run-off control, where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.	Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits

A March of the theorem and the discrete second states and
4. Monitor the area regularly after larger rainfall events
to determine where erosion may be initiated and then
mitigate by modifying the soil micro-topography and
revegetation or soil erosion control efforts accordingly
5. Wind screening and stormwater control should be
undertaken to prevent soil loss from the site.
6. The use of silt fences and sand bags must be
implemented in areas that are susceptible to erosion.
7. Other erosion control measures that can be
implemented are as follows:
$\circ$ Brush packing with cleared vegetation
<ul> <li>Mulch or chip packing</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Planting of vegetation</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Hydroseeding/hand sowing</li> <li>8. Sensitive areas need to be identified prior to</li> </ul>
construction/prospecting so that the necessary
precautions can be implemented.
9. All erosion control mechanisms need to be regularly
maintained.
10. Seeding of topsoil and subsoil stockpiles to prevent
wind and water erosion of soil surfaces.
11. Retention of vegetation where possible to avoid soil
erosion.
12. Vegetation clearance should be phased to ensure that
the minimum area of soil is exposed to potential
erosion at any one time.
13. Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces should occur
immediately after construction/prospecting activities
are completed. This should be done through seeding
with indigenous grasses.
14. No impediment to the natural water flow other than
approved erosion control works is permitted.
15. To prevent stormwater damage, the increase in
stormwater run-off resulting from

Air Pollution       Air       (construction and operation phase)       Dust control       Minimisation of impacts to acceptable will reduce dust ravel.         1       Wheel washing and demping down of un-surfaced acceptable limits       Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting wasther conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.       Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting wasther conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.       Damping down of all exposed soil surfaces with a water boxes or sprinklers when necessary to reduce dust.         5       The Contractor shall be responsible for dust control on site to ensure no nuisance is caused to the neighbouring communities.       Appendimit of admits or claims emanaing from the lack of dust control shall be attended to immediately by the Contractor.         8       Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.         Odour control       9. Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.         10. Regular servicing of onsite tolets to avoid potential downs       Rehabilitation				<ul> <li>construction/prospecting activities must be estimated and the drainage system assessed accordingly.</li> <li>16. Stockpiles not used in three (3) months after stripping must be seeded or backfilled to prevent dust and erosion.</li> </ul>
	Air Pollution	Air	`	<ol> <li>Wheel washing and damping down of un-surfaced and un-vegetated areas.</li> <li>Retention of vegetation where possible will reduce dust travel.</li> <li>Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting weather conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.</li> <li>Damping down of all exposed soil surfaces with a water bowser or sprinklers when necessary to reduce dust.</li> <li>The Contractor shall be responsible for dust control on site to ensure no nuisance is caused to the neighbouring communities.</li> <li>A speed limit of 30km/h must not be exceeded on site.</li> <li>Any complaints or claims emanating from the lack of dust control shall be attended to immediately by the Contractor.</li> <li>Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.</li> <li>Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.</li> <li>Regular servicing of onsite toilets to avoid potential odours.</li> </ol>

		<ul> <li>11. The Contractor should commence rehabilitation of exposed soil surfaces as soon as practical after completion of earthworks.</li> <li>Fire prevention</li> <li>12. No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.</li> <li>13. The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.</li> </ul>
Noise	(construction and operation phase)	<ol> <li>The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.</li> <li>Workshops and other noisy fixed facilities should be located well away from noise sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts are made available by the Contractor(s), the sites must be evaluated in detail and specific measures designed in to the system.</li> <li>Truck traffic should be routed away from noise sensitive areas, where possible.</li> <li>Noise levels must be kept within acceptable limits.</li> <li>Noisy operations should be combined so that they occur where possible at the same time.</li> <li>Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection gear.</li> <li>Noise from labourers must be controlled.</li> <li>Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment. Equipment must be kept in good working order, should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working order,</li> </ol>

Impact on potential cultural	Heritage and	(construction and	<ul> <li>the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending vehicle or machinery from the site.</li> <li>10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own transport.</li> <li>11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.</li> <li>12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a machine.</li> </ul>	Minimisation of impacts to
Impact on potential cultural, heritage artefacts and fossils.	Heritage and Palaeontology	(construction and operation phase)	I Take note of the position of the existing heritage sites;         I A buffer zone of 50 metres should be maintained;	acceptable limits
			I The graveyard should be fenced off with a gate installed; and	
			<ol> <li>Care should be taken to prevent any indirect impacts on the historical structures.</li> <li>Any finds must be reported to the nearest National</li> </ol>	
			Monuments office to comply with the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No 25 of 1999) and to DEA.	
			2. Local museums as well as the South African Heritage Resource Agency (SAHRA) should be informed if any artefacts/ fossils are uncovered in the affected area.	
			<ol> <li>The Contractor must ensure that his workforce is aware of the necessity of reporting any possible historical, archaeological or palaeontological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</li> </ol>	

A Known either should be already mentiond in ender that
4. Known sites should be clearly marked in order that
they can be avoided. The work force should also be
informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.
5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and
palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and
digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise
themselves with formations and its fossils or a
palaeontologist should be appointed during the
digging and excavation phase of the development.
6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities
must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological
artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be
called in to determine proper management, mitigation,
excavation and/or collecting measures.
7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be
removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of
a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained
and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits
shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed
site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if
any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed
or altered.
8. Under no circumstances shall any artefacts be
removed, destroyed or interfered with by anyone on
the site; and contractors and workers shall be advised
of the penalties associated with the unlawful removal
palaeontological artefacts, as set out in the NHRA
(Act No. 25 of 1999), Section 51. (1).
9. If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological
significance is found during the construction and
operational phase of the mine the following applies:
<ul> <li>NHRA 38(4)c(i) – If any evidence of archaeological</li> </ul>
sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made
structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone

	<ul> <li>artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>NHRA 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>NHRA 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</li> <li>NHRA 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>NHRA 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;</li> </ul>	
	If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the <b>Chance Find Protocol</b> must be implemented by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA (Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel:	

021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509. Web:
www.sahra.org.za) so that mitigation can be carry out by a
paleontologist.
Chance Find Procedure
Unance I ind I rocedure
If a chance find is made the person responsible for the
find must immediately stop working and all work that
could impact that finding must cease in the immediate
vicinity of the find.
• The person who made the find must immediately
report the find to his/her direct supervisor which in turn
must report the find to his/her manager and the ESO
or site manager. The ESO or site manager must
report the find to the relevant Heritage Agency (South
African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA).
(Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street,
Cape Town. PO Box 4637, Cape Town 8000, South
Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27 (0)21 462 4509.
Web: www.sahra.org.za). The information to the
Heritage Agency must include photographs of the
find, from various angles, as well as the GPS co-
ordinates.
<ul> <li>A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage</li> </ul>
Agency within 24 hours of the find and must include
the following: 1) date of the find; 2) a description of the
discovery and a 3) description of the fossil and its
context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS co-
ordinates.
<ul> <li>Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery</li> </ul>
must be of high quality, in focus, accompanied by a
scale. It is also important to have photographs of the
vertical section (side) where the fossil was found.

			<ul> <li>Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.</li> <li>The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage. No attempt should be made to remove material from their environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered by a plastic sheet or sand bags. The Heritage agency will also be able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the find.</li> <li>In the event that the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be collected with extreme care by the ESO (site manager). Fossils finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from the rescue site.</li> <li>Once Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may continue with the development on the affected area.</li> </ul>
Waste management	Pollution	(construction and operation phase)	Litter management       Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits         1. Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction site.       Minimisation of impacts to acceptable limits         2. The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.       Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and rubble situation on the construction site.         4. If possible and feasible, all waste generated on site must be separated into glass, plastic, paper, metal

and wood and recycled. An independent contractor
can be appointed to conduct this recycling.
5. Littering by the employees of the Contractor shall not
be allowed under any circumstances. The ECO shall
monitor the neatness of the work sites as well as the
Contractor campsite.
6. Skip waste containers should be maintained on site.
These should be kept covered and arrangements
made for them to be collected regularly.
7. All waste must be removed from the site and
transported to a landfill site promptly to ensure that it
does not attract vermin or produce odours.
8. Where a registered waste site is not available close to
the construction site, the Contractor shall provide a
method statement with regard to waste management.
9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the
Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.
10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on
site.
11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it
does not attract vermin or produce odours.
Hazardous waste
12. All waste hazardous materials must be carefully
stored as advised by the ECO, and then disposed of
offsite at a licensed landfill site, where practical.
Incineration may be used where relevant.
13. Contaminants to be stored safely to avoid spillage.
14. Machinery must be properly maintained to keep oil
leaks in check.
15. All necessary precaution measures shall be taken to
prevent soil or surface water pollution from hazardous
materials used during construction and any spills shall
immediately be cleaned up and all affected areas
rehabilitated.
Tonabilitated.

Sanitation
16. The Contractor shall install mobile chemical toilets on
the site.
17. Staff shall be sensitised to the fact that they should
use these facilities at all times. No indiscriminate
sanitary activities on site shall be allowed.
18. Toilets shall be serviced regularly and the ECO shall
inspect toilets regularly.
19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the
1:100 year flood line from any natural or manmade
water bodies or drainage lines or alternatively located
in a place approved of by the Engineer.
20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours
fences or the surrounding bush be used as a toilet
facility.
21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden,
but rather toilets connected to the sewage treatment
plant.
22. Potable water must be provided for all construction
staff.
Remedial actions
23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill,
contaminated soil must be either excavated or treated
on-site.
24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful
removal of soil using appropriate tools/machinery to
storage containers until treated or disposed of at a
licensed hazardous landfill site.
25. The ECO must determine the precise method of
treatment for polluted soil. This could involve the
application of soil absorbent materials as well as oil-
digestive powders to the contaminated soil.

				<ul> <li>26. If a spill occurs on an impermeable surface such as cement or concrete, the surface spill must be contained using oil absorbent material.</li> <li>27. If necessary, oil absorbent sheets or pads must be attached to leaky machinery or infrastructure.</li> <li>28. Materials used for the remediation of petrochemical spills must be used according to product specifications and guidance for use.</li> <li>29. Contaminated remediation materials must be carefully removed from the area of the spill so as to prevent further release of petrochemicals to the environment, and stored in adequate containers until appropriate disposal.</li> </ul>
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	Water	(construction and operation phase)	<ul> <li>Water Use</li> <li>1. Develop a sustainable water supply management plan to minimise the impact to natural systems by managing water use, avoiding depletion of aquifers and minimising impacts to water users.</li> <li>2. Water must be reused, recycled or treated where possible.</li> </ul>
				<ul> <li>Water Quality</li> <li>The quality and quantity of effluent streams discharged to the environment including stormwater should be managed and treated to meet applicable effluent discharge guidelines.</li> <li>Discharge to surface water should not result in contaminant concentrations in excess of local ambient water quality criteria outside a scientifically established mixing zone.</li> <li>Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots, and containment areas and spill kits should be available with</li> </ul>

<ul> <li>Stormwater</li> <li>6. The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains, downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended solids and silt or chemical pollutants.</li> <li>7. Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the stormwater drains.</li> <li>8. Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to capture stormwater and promote infiltration.</li> <li>9. Promote a water saving mind set with construction/ prospecting workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.</li> <li>10. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 40m from any water bodies on site to avoid pollution.</li> <li>11. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as scon as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase as well as the operation phase.</li> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system to ensure that the water flow is</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>12. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site. i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels, drainage lines or rivers.</li> <li>13. There should be a periodic checking of the site's</li> </ul>
dongas. Groundwater resource protection

15. Process solution storage ponds and other impoundments designed to hold non fresh water or non-treated process effluents should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality.         Sanitation
non-treated process effluents should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality. Sanitation
equipped with sufficient wells to enable monitoring of water levels and quality. Sanitation
Sanitation
16. Adequate sanitary facilities and ablutions must be
provided for construction workers (1 toilet per every
15 workers).
17. The facilities must be regularly serviced to reduce the
risk of surface or groundwater pollution.
Concrete mixing
18. Concrete contaminated water must not enter soil or
any natural drainage system as this disturbs the
natural acidity of the soil and affects plant growth.
Public areas
19. Food preparation areas should be provided with
adequate washing facilities and food refuse should be
stored in sealed refuse bins which should be removed
from site on a regular basis.
20. The Contractor should take steps to ensure that
littering by construction/ prospecting workers does not
occur and persons should be employed on site to
collect litter from the site and immediate surroundings,
including litter accumulating at fence lines.
21. No washing or servicing of vehicles on site.

# F) IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

(A description of impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management objectives and outcomes contemplated in paragraphs (c) and (d) will be achieved).

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
Whether listed or not listed. (E.g. Excavations,	(e.g. dust, noise,	ТҮРЕ	Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental	(A description of how each of the
blasting, stockpiles,	drainage surface	(modify, remedy, control, or stop)	management programme must be	recommendations in 2.11.6 read with
discard dumps or dams,	disturbance, fly rock,	through	implemented Measures must be	2.12 and 2.15.2 herein will comply with
Loading, hauling and	surface water	(e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control, dust control,	implemented when required.	any prescribed environmental
transport, Water supply	contamination,	rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance,	With regard to Rehabilitation specifically	management standards or practices
dams and boreholes,	groundwater	relocation, alternative activity etc. etc)	this must take place at the earliest	that have been identified by
accommodation, offices, ablution, stores,	contamination, air	En	opportunityWith regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either:	Competent Authorities)
ablution, stores, workshops, processing	pollution etcetc)	<ul><li>E.g.</li><li>Modify through alternative method.</li></ul>	Upon cessation of the individual activity	
plant, storm water control,		Control through noise control	or.	
berms, roads, pipelines,		Control through management and monitoring	Upon the cessation of mining, bulk	
power lines, conveyors,		Remedy through rehabilitation	sampling or prospecting as the case may	
etcetcetc.).		, °	be.	
Changing the physical	Construction:	Other than approved and authorised structures, no other	Duration of operation	The implementation of the
structure within a water	Infrastructure	development or maintenance infrastructure is allowed within the		recommended mitigation measures
resource (habitat)	development within watercourses	delineated watercourse and riparian areas or their associated		will result in the minimisation of
	Loss of vegetation	<ul> <li>buffer zones.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place</li> </ul>		impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with
	Erosion	throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.		NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed
		<ul> <li>Monitor the occurrence of erosion during the rainy season and</li> </ul>		by NEMA.
	Operational:	take immediate corrective action where needed.		-
	Excavation from the	No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the		
	watercourses leading	calculated buffers.		
	to degraded river	All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat		
	channels.	areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by		
	<ul> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul>	bunds.		
		No maintenance within watercourses must be conducted.		

	<ul> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> <li>Loss of biodiversity</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> <li>Decommissioning:         <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> </ul> </li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Maintenance activities should not impact on rehabilitated or naturally vegetated areas.</li> <li>The duration of impacts on the wetland systems should be minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is minimised.</li> <li>Rehabilitation must ensure that wetland structure and function are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing functionality of the systems at pre-prospecting levels.</li> <li>All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.</li> </ul>		
Alteration of the amount of sediment entering the water resource and associated change in turbidity	<ul> <li>Construction:         <ul> <li>Vegetation clearance causing sedimentation</li> <li>Earthworks activities</li> <li>Disturbance of soil surface and runoff characteristics</li> <li>Erosion</li> </ul> </li> <li>Operational:         <ul> <li>Excavation from the watercourses leading to degraded river channels.</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Buffer zones should be maintained, in order to minimise sedimentation of the downstream areas.</li> <li>No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse or the calculated buffers.</li> <li>Ensure that erosion management and sediment controls are strictly implemented from the beginning of site clearing activities.</li> <li>All areas should be re-sloped and top-soiled where necessary and reseeded with indigenous grasses to stabilise the loose material.</li> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed stream banks.</li> <li>As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

				,
	Clearing of	Erosion control measures, such as berms, must be		
	vegetation -	implemented to manage runoff from roads to prevent erosion		
	vegetation loss	and pollution.		
	Loss of biodiversity	Rehabilitation of disturbed areas as a result of construction		
	<ul> <li>Vehicles driving in</li> </ul>	must be implemented immediately upon completion of		
	and through	construction.		
	watercourses	Rehabilitation must ensure that riparian structure and function		
		are reinstated in such a way as to ensure the ongoing		
	Decommissioning:	functionality of the larger riparian systems at pre-prospecting		
	Damage to	levels.		
	vegetated areas	• All rehabilitation activities should occur in the dry season.		
	Ineffective	The duration of impacts on the riverine systems should be		
	rehabilitation	minimised as far as possible by ensuring that the duration of		
	measures	time in which flow alteration and sedimentation will take place is		
	Vehicles driving in and	minimised.		
	through watercourses	Maintain flood capacity, particularly in areas with significant flood		
		hazards.		
Alteration of water quality	Construction:	Re-fuelling must take place on a sealed surface area to prevent	Duration of operation	The implementation of the
(surface and groundwater)	Runoff from road	hydrocarbon pollution.	Bulation of operation	recommended mitigation measures
and soil pollution	surfaces	<ul> <li>All spills should be cleaned up immediately and disposed of.</li> </ul>		will result in the minimisation of
	Discharge of			impacts to acceptable standards,
	solvents, chemicals	Spill kits should be readily available and easily accessible there we have the site		thereby ensuring compliance with
	and hydrocarbons	throughout the site.		NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed
	and hydrocarbons	All chemicals must be stored safely on site, outside the buffer		by NEMA.
	Operational:	areas and surrounded by bunds. Chemical storage containers		by NEWA.
	Maintenance of	must be regularly inspected for early leak detection.		
	vehicles and	Littering must be prevented by effective site management and		
	machinery	the provision of bins.		
	Runoff from road	Provision of adequate sanitation facilities located outside of the		
	Runon from road     surfaces	delineated buffer zones.		
		An emergency spill procedure should be developed and		
	Discharge of sewage     Discharge of	implemented.		
	Discharge of	No stockpiling should take place within a watercourse.		
	solvents, chemicals			
	and hydrocarbons			

	<ul> <li>Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> <li>Removal of substrate within wetlands</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>All stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where run-off will be minimised, and be surrounded by bunds.</li> <li>Stockpiles must be located away from channels, wetlands and drainage lines.</li> <li>Erosion and sedimentation into channels must be minimised through the effective stabilisation and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Decommissioning:         <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> </ul> </li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>			
Loss of terrestrial habitat	<ul> <li>Construction:         <ul> <li>Clearing of vegetation – vegetation loss</li> </ul> </li> <li>Operational:         <ul> <li>Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation during prospecting operations</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation.</li> <li>It is recommended that areas to be developed be specifically demarcated so that during the construction phase, only the demarcated areas be impacted upon (including fencing off the defined project area) and preventing movement of workers into natural areas.</li> <li>The duration of the prospecting should be minimised to as short term as possible, in order to reduce the period of disturbance on fauna and flora.</li> <li>Areas of indigenous vegetation should under no circumstances be fragmented or disturbed or used as an area for dumping of waste.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.
	<ul> <li>Decommissioning:</li> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>As far as possible the existing road network should be utilised, minimising the need to develop new access routes resulting in an increased impact on the local environment.</li> </ul>		

	Ineffective     rehabilitation     measures	<ul> <li>All staff and visitors to the site must undergo an induction process and must be made aware of the sensitive nature of the environment and floral species which occur there.</li> <li>The area must be re-vegetated with plant and grass species which are indigenous to the exact vegetation types.</li> <li>Rehabilitation measures that are implemented must be continually monitored to ensure that proper succession has occurred and that there is no erosion occurring.</li> <li>An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> </ul>		
Loss of Aquatic Biota	<ul> <li>Construction:         <ul> <li>Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>Sedimentation</li> <li>Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> </ul> </li> <li>Operational:         <ul> <li>Maintenance of vehicles and machinery</li> <li>Runoff from road surfaces</li> <li>Discharge of solvents, chemicals and hydrocarbons</li> <li>Excavation from the watercourses and the release of nutrients and pollutants from disturbed soils</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Biomonitoring of aquatic organisms within the wetland systems is essential.	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

	Removal of substrate within wetlands Sedimentation			
Loss of Terrestrial Fauna	Construction and Operational: Vegetation loss and disturbance – clearing of vegetation Excessive noise disturbances Illegal hunting Habitat fragmentation destruction Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areas	<ul> <li>Site clearing to take place in a phased manner (where possible) to allow for any faunal species present to move away from the study site to the surrounding open space areas.</li> <li>Prior and during vegetation clearance any larger fauna species noted should be given the opportunity to move away from the construction machinery.</li> <li>Fauna species such as frogs and reptiles that have not moved away should be carefully and safely removed to a suitable location beyond the extent of the development footprint by a suitably qualified ECO trained in the handling and relocation of animals.</li> <li>Fencing should be erected around the project area to prevent workers and members of the public from entering the surrounding environments. This fence should have small openings to allow wildlife to pass through.</li> <li>Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.</li> <li>Should any sensitive or Red Data animal or bird species be encountered during the construction, operation and decommissioning activities, these should be preserved as museum voucher specimens.</li> <li>No hunting, trapping or killing of fauna are allowed.</li> <li>Any lizards, snakes or monitors encountered should be allowed to escape to a suitable habitat away from disturbance.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		General avoidance of snakes is the best policy if encountered. Snakes should not be intentionally harmed or killed and allowed free movement away from the area. Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.		
Loss of Terrestrial Flora	Construction and Operational:• Vegetation clearance• Vehicles driving through natural vegetated areasHabitat fragmentation and destruction	<ul> <li>Areas that are stripped during construction and operation should be re-vegetated with indigenous vegetation as soon as possible. This will also reduce the likelihood of encroachment by alien invasive plant species.</li> <li>Protected trees and plants shall not be removed or damaged without prior approval, permits or licenses from the relevant authority.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.
Introduction and spread of alien vegetation	<ul> <li>Construction:         <ul> <li>Clearing of vegetation</li> </ul> </li> <li>Operational:         <ul> <li>Removal of substrate within watercourses</li> <li>Clearing of vegetation during prospecting operations</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul> </li> <li>Decommissioning:         <ul> <li>Damage to vegetated areas</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Proliferation of alien and invasive species is expected within any disturbed areas particularly as there are some alien and invasive species present within the study site. These species should be eradicated and controlled to prevent further spread beyond.</li> <li>An alien invasive vegetation management plan should be developed and implemented.</li> <li>Alien and invasive vegetation control should take place throughout all phases to prevent loss of floral habitat.</li> <li>Footprint areas should be kept as small as possible when removing alien plant species.</li> <li>No vehicles should be allowed to drive through designated sensitive drainage and wetlands areas during the eradication of alien and weed species.</li> <li>Monitoring and eradication of invasive plant species should be continued five years after decommissioning.</li> </ul>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

	<ul> <li>Ineffective rehabilitation measures</li> <li>Vehicles driving in and through watercourses</li> </ul>		
Prospecting without bulk sampling for Diamond (Alluvial), Diamonds (General), Diamonds & Diamonds (Kimberlite).	Loss of topsoil	<ol> <li>The Contractor should, prior to the commencement of earthworks determine the average depth of topsoil, and agree on this with the ECO. The full depth of topsoil should be stripped from areas affected by construction/prospecting and related activities prior to the commencement of major earthworks. This should include the building footprints, working areas and storage areas. Topsoil must be reused where possible to rehabilitate disturbed areas.</li> <li>Care must be taken not to mix topsoil and subsoil or any other material, during stripping.</li> <li>The topsoil must be conserved on site in and around the pit/trench area.</li> <li>Subsoil and overburden in the prospecting area should be stockpiled separately to be returned for backfilling in the correct soil horizon order.</li> <li>If stockpiles are exposed to windy conditions or heavy rain, they should be covered either by vegetation or geofabric, depending on the duration of the project. Stockpiles may further be protected by the construction of soil is expected, analysis must be done prior to disposal of soil to determine the appropriate disposal route. Proof from an approved waste disposal site where contaminated soils are dumped if and when a spillage/leakage occurs should be attained and given to the project manager.</li> <li>Establish an effective record keeping system for each area where soil is disturbed for prospecting purposes. These records should be included in environmental performance reports, and should include all</li> </ol>	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.
		the records below.	

		<ul> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of each area.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Record the date of topsoil stripping.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Record the GPS coordinates of where the topsoil is stockpiled.</li> </ul>		
		• Record the date of cessation prospecting activities at the		
		particular site.		
		<ul> <li>Photograph the area on cessation of prospecting activities.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Record date and depth of re-spreading of topsoil.</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Photograph the area on completion of rehabilitation and on an</li> </ul>		
		annual basis thereafter to show vegetation establishment and		
		evaluate progress of restoration over time.		
Er	rosion	1. An effective system of run-off control should be implemented,	Duration of operation	The implementation of the
		where it is required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off		recommended mitigation measures
		water from all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down		will result in the minimisation of
		slope erosion.		impacts to acceptable standards,
		2. Periodical site inspection should be included in environmental		thereby ensuring compliance with
		performance reporting that inspects the effectiveness of the run-		NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed
		off control system and specifically records the occurrence of any		by NEMA.
		erosion on site or downstream.		
	:	3. Implement an effective system of run-off control, where it is		
		required, that collects and safely disseminates run-off water from		
		all hardened surfaces and prevents potential down slope erosion.		
	4	4. Monitor the area regularly after larger rainfall events to determine		
		where erosion may be initiated and then mitigate by modifying the		
		soil micro-topography and revegetation or soil erosion control		
		efforts accordingly		
	4	5. Wind screening and stormwater control should be undertaken to		
		prevent soil loss from the site.		
	(	6. The use of silt fences and sand bags must be implemented in		
		areas that are susceptible to erosion.		
		7. Other erosion control measures that can be implemented are as		
		follows:		
		<ul> <li>Brush packing with cleared vegetation</li> </ul>		
		Mulch or chip packing		
		<ul> <li>Planting of vegetation</li> </ul>		
		<ul> <li>Hydroseeding/hand sowing</li> </ul>		

	<ol> <li>Sensitive areas need to be identified prior to construction/prospecting so that the necessary precautions can be implemented.</li> <li>All erosion control mechanisms need to be regularly maintained.</li> <li>Seeding of topsoil and subsoil stockpiles to prevent wind and water erosion of soil surfaces.</li> <li>Retention of vegetation where possible to avoid soil erosion.</li> <li>Vegetation clearance should be phased to ensure that the minimum area of soil is exposed to potential erosion at any one time.</li> <li>Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces should occur immediately after construction/prospecting activities are completed. This should be done through seeding with indigenous grasses.</li> <li>No impediment to the natural water flow other than approved erosion control works is permitted.</li> <li>To prevent stormwater damage, the increase in stormwater runoff resulting from construction/prospecting activities must be estimated and the drainage system assessed accordingly. A drainage plan must be submitted to the Engineer for approval and must include the location and design criteria of any temporary</li> </ol>		
	stream crossings. 16. Stockpiles not used in three (3) months after stripping must be		
	seeded/backfilled to prevent dust and erosion.		
Air Pollution	<ol> <li>Dust control         <ol> <li>Wheel washing and damping down of un-surfaced and unvegetated areas.</li> <li>Retention of vegetation where possible will reduce dust travel.</li> <li>Clearing activities must only be done during agreed working times and permitting weather conditions to avoid drifting of sand and dust into neighbouring areas.</li> </ol> </li> <li>Damping down of all exposed soil surfaces with a water bowser or sprinklers when necessary to reduce dust.</li> <li>The Contractor shall be responsible for dust control on site to ensure no nuisance is caused to the neighbouring communities.</li> <li>A speed limit of 30km/h must not be exceeded on site.</li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

		<ol> <li>Any complaints or claims emanating from the lack of dust control shall be attended to immediately by the Contractor.</li> <li>Any dirt roads that are utilised by the workers must be regularly maintained to ensure that dust levels are controlled.</li> </ol>		
		<ul><li>Odour control</li><li>9. Regular servicing of vehicles in order to limit gaseous emissions.</li><li>10. Regular servicing of onsite toilets to avoid potential odours.</li></ul>		
		<ul><li>Rehabilitation</li><li>11. The Contractor should commence rehabilitation of exposed soil surfaces as soon as practical after completion of earthworks.</li></ul>		
		<ul> <li>Fire prevention</li> <li>12. No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.</li> <li>13. The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.</li> </ul>		
N	Noise	<ol> <li>The prospecting activities must aim to adhere to the relevant noise regulations and limit noise to within standard working hours in order to reduce disturbance of dwellings in close proximity to the development.</li> <li>Pans, power plants, crushers, workshops and other noisy fixed facilities should be located well away from noise sensitive areas. Once the proposed final layouts are made available by the Contractor(s), the sites must be evaluated in detail and specific measures designed in to the system.</li> </ol>	Duration of operation	The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.
		<ol> <li>Truck traffic should be routed away from noise sensitive areas, where possible.</li> <li>Noise levels must be kept within acceptable limits.</li> <li>Noisy operations should be combined so that they occur where possible at the same time.</li> </ol>		

I		-		ر
		6. Mine workers to wear necessary ear protection gear.		
		<ol><li>Noisy activities to take place during allocated hours.</li></ol>		
		8. Noise from labourers must be controlled.		
		9. Noise suppression measures must be applied to all equipment.		
		Equipment must be kept in good working order and where		
		appropriate fitted with silencers which are kept in good working		
		order. Should the vehicles or equipment not be in good working		
		order, the Contractor may be instructed to remove the offending		
		vehicle or machinery from the site.		
		10. The Contractor must take measures to discourage labourers from		
		loitering in the area and causing noise disturbance. Where		
		possible labour shall be transported to and from the site by the		
		Contractor or his Sub-Contractors by the Contractors own		
		transport.		
		11. Implementation of enclosure and cladding of processing plants.		
		12. Applying regular and thorough maintenance schedules to		
		equipment and processes. An increase in noise emission levels		
		very often is a sign of the imminent mechanical failure of a		
		machine.		
	Impact on potential	I Take note of the position of the existing heritage sites;	Duration of operation	The implementation of the
	cultural, heritage artefacts			recommended mitigation measures
	and fossils.	I A buffer zone of 50 metres should be maintained:		will result in the minimisation of
				impacts to acceptable standards,
		I The graveyard should be fenced off with a gate installed; and		thereby ensuring compliance with
				NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed
		I Care should be taken to prevent any indirect impacts on the		by NEMA.
		historical structures.		
		1. Any finds must be reported to the nearest National Monuments		
		office to comply with the National Heritage Resources Act (Act No		
		25 of 1999) and to DEA.		
		2. Local museums as well as the South African Heritage Resource		
		Agency (SAHRA) should be informed if any artefacts/ fossils are		
		uncovered in the affected area.		
				1

<ol> <li>The Contractor must ensure that his workforce is aware of the necessity of reporting any possible historical, archaeological or palaeontological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</li> <li>Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The workforce should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontological is should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and aspecialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ol>
<ul> <li>palaeontological finds to the ECO so that appropriate action can be taken.</li> <li>4. Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The workforce should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>be taken.</li> <li>Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The workforce should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiaries themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitgation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>4. Known sites should be clearly marked in order that they can be avoided. The workforce should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>avoided. The workforce should also be informed that fenced-off areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>areas are no-go areas.</li> <li>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permit is shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>5. The ECO must also survey for heritage and palaeontological artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>artefacts during ground breaking and digging or drilling. He/she should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>should familiarise themselves with formations and its fossils or a palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>palaeontologist should be appointed during the digging and excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>excavation phase of the development.</li> <li>All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>6. All digging, excavating, drilling or blasting activities must be stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>stopped if heritage and/or palaeontological artefacts are uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>uncovered and a specialist should be called in to determine proper management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>management, mitigation, excavation and/or collecting measures.</li> <li>7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.</li> </ul>
7. Any discovered artefacts or fossils shall not be removed under any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
any circumstances. Any destruction of a site can only be allowed once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
once a permit is obtained and the site has been mapped and noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
noted. Permits shall be obtained from SAHRA should the proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
proposed site affect any world heritage/palaeontology sites or if any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
any heritage/palaeontology sites are to be destroyed or altered.
8. Under no circumstances shall any artefacts be removed,
destroyed or interfered with by anyone on the site; and contractors
and workers shall be advised of the penalties associated with the
unlawful removal of cultural, historical, archaeological or
palaeontological artefacts, as set out in the NHRA (Act No. 25 of
1999), Section 51. (1).
9. If anything of Archaeological and/or paleontological significance
is found during the construction and operational phase of the
mine the following applies:
<ul> <li>NHRA 38(4)c(i) – If any evidence of archaeological sites or</li> </ul>
remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous
ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments,
charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of

heritage resources are found during the proposed development,	
SAHRA APM Unit (021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section	
35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is	
an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of	
the Schedule;	
• NHRA 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the	
SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (012 320 8490),	
must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA.	
Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms	
of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;	
• NHRA 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the	
appointment of specialists: i) If heritage resources are uncovered	
during the course of the development, a professional	
archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the	
finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the	
heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources	
prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a	
Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits	
issued by SAHRA;	
If fossil remains or trace fossils are discovered during any phase of	
construction, either on the surface or exposed by excavations the	
Chance Find Protocol must be implemented by the Environmental	
Control Officer (ECO) in charge of these developments. These	
discoveries ought to be protected and the ECO must report to SAHRA	
(Contact details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box	
4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax: +27	
(0)21 462 4509. Web: <u>www.sahra.org.za</u> ) so that mitigation can be	
carry out by a paleontologist.	
Ohenes Find Dessedues	
Chance Find Procedure	
. If a change find is made the person responsible for the first must	
<ul> <li>If a chance find is made the person responsible for the find must immediately atta working and all work that could impact that</li> </ul>	
immediately stop working and all work that could impact that	
finding must cease in the immediate vicinity of the find.	

	• The person who made the find must immediately report the find	
	to his/her direct supervisor which in turn must report the find to	
	his/her manager and the ESO or site manager. The ESO or site	
	manager must report the find to the relevant Heritage Agency	
	(South African Heritage Research Agency, SAHRA). (Contact	
	details: SAHRA, 111 Harrington Street, Cape Town. PO Box	
	4637, Cape Town 8000, South Africa. Tel: 021 462 4502. Fax:	
	+27 (0)21 462 4509. Web: www.sahra.org.za). The information to	
	the Heritage Agency must include photographs of the find, from	
	various angles, as well as the GPS co-ordinates.	
	• A preliminary report must be submitted to the Heritage Agency	
	within 24 hours of the find and must include the following: 1) date	
	of the find; 2) a description of the discovery and a 3) description	
	of the fossil and its context (depth and position of the fossil), GPS	
	co-ordinates.	
	• Photographs (the more the better) of the discovery must be of high	
	quality, in focus, accompanied by a scale. It is also important to	
	have photographs of the vertical section (side) where the fossil	
	was found.	
	Upon receipt of the preliminary report, the Heritage Agency will inform	
	the ESO (or site manager) whether a rescue excavation or rescue	
	collection by a palaeontologist is necessary.	
	• The site must be secured to protect it from any further damage.	
	No attempt should be made to remove material from their	
	environment. The exposed finds must be stabilized and covered	
	by a plastic sheet or sand bags. The Heritage agency will also be	
	able to advise on the most suitable method of protection of the	
	find.	
	• In the event that the fossil cannot be stabilized the fossil may be	
	collected with extreme care by the ESO (site manager). Fossils	
	finds must be stored in tissue paper and in an appropriate box	
	while due care must be taken to remove all fossil material from	
	the rescue site.	

	<ul> <li>Once Heritage Agency has issued the written authorization, the developer may continue with the development on the affected area.</li> </ul>	
Waste Management	Litter management       Duration of operation         1. Refuse bins must be placed at strategic positions to ensure that litter does not accumulate within the construction/prospecting site.       Duration of operation         2. The Contractor shall supply waste collection bins where such is not available and all solid waste collected shall be disposed of at registered/licensed landfill.       Good housekeeping practices should be implemented to regularly maintain the litter and rubble situation on the construction prospecting site.       If possible and feasible, all waste generated on site must be separated into glass, plastic, paper, metal and wood and recycled. An independent contractor can be appointed to conduct this recycling.         5. Littering by the employees of the Contractor shall not be allowed under any circumstances. The ECO shall monitor the neatness of the work sites as well as the Contractor campsite.         6. Skip waste containers should be maintained on site. These should be kept covered and arrangements made for them to be collected regularly.         7. All waste must be removed from the site and transported to a landfill site promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.         8. Where a registered waste site is not available close to the construction/prospecting site, the Contractor shall provide a method statement with regard to waste management.         9. A certificate of disposal shall be obtained by the Contractor and kept on file, if relevant.         10. Under no circumstances may solid waste be burnt on site.         11. All waste must be removed promptly to ensure that it does not attract vermin or produce odours.	n The implementation of the recommended mitigation measures will result in the minimisation of impacts to acceptable standards, thereby ensuring compliance with NEMA and Duty of Care as prescribed by NEMA.

Hazardous waste	
12. All waste hazardous materials must be carefully stored as advised	
by the ECO, and then disposed of offsite at a licensed landfill site,	
where practical. Incineration may be used where relevant.	
13. Contaminants to be stored safely to avoid spillage.	
14. Machinery must be properly maintained to keep oil leaks in check.	
15. All necessary precaution measures shall be taken to prevent soil	
or surface water pollution from hazardous materials used during	
construction/prospecting and any spills shall immediately be	
cleaned up and all affected areas rehabilitated.	
Sanitation	
16. The Contractor shall install mobile chemical toilets on the site.	
17. Staff shall be sensitised to the fact that they should use these	
facilities at all times. No indiscriminate sanitary activities on site	
shall be allowed.	
18. Toilets shall be serviced regularly and the ECO shall inspect	
toilets regularly.	
19. Toilets should be no closer than 50m or above the 1:100 year	
flood line from any natural or manmade water bodies or drainage	
lines or alternatively located in a place approved of by the	
Engineer.	
20. Under no circumstances may open areas, neighbours fences or	
the surrounding bush be used as a toilet facility.	
21. The construction of "Long Drop" toilets is forbidden, but rather	
toilets connected to the sewage treatment plant.	
22. Potable water must be provided for all construction staff.	
Remedial actions	
23. Depending on the nature and extent of the spill, contaminated soil	
must be either excavated or treated on-site.	
24. Excavation of contaminated soil must involve careful removal of	
soil using appropriate tools/machinery to storage containers until	
treated or disposed of at a licensed hazardous landfill site.	

		25. The ECO must determine the precise method of treatment for
		polluted soil. This could involve the application of soil absorbent
		materials as well as oil-digestive powders to the contaminated
		soil.
		26. If a spill occurs on an impermeable surface such as cement or
		concrete, the surface spill must be contained using oil absorbent
		material.
		27. If necessary, oil absorbent sheets or pads must be attached to
		leaky machinery or infrastructure.
		28. Materials used for the remediation of petrochemical spills must be
		used according to product specifications and guidance for use.
		29. Contaminated remediation materials must be carefully removed
		from the area of the spill so as to prevent further release of
		petrochemicals to the environment, and stored in adequate
		containers until appropriate disposal.
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	Water Use
		1. Develop a sustainable water supply management plan to
		minimise the impact to natural systems by managing water use,
		avoiding depletion of aquifers and minimising impacts to water
		users.
		2. Water must be reused, recycled or treated where possible.
		Water Quality
		3. The quality and quantity of effluent streams discharged to the
		environment including stormwater should be managed and
		treated to meet applicable effluent discharge guidelines.
		4. Discharge to surface water should not result in contaminant
		concentrations in excess of local ambient water quality criteria
		outside a scientifically established mixing zone.
		5. Efficient oil and grease traps or sumps should be installed and
		maintained at refueling facilities, workshops, fuel storage depots,
		and containment areas and spill kits should be available with
		emergency response plans.
		Stormwater
	<u> </u>	

6. The site must be managed in order to prevent pollution of drains,
downstream watercourses or groundwater, due to suspended
solids and silt or chemical pollutants.
7. Silt fences should be used to prevent any soil entering the
stormwater drains.
<ol> <li>Temporary cut off drains and berms may be required to capture stormwater and promote infiltration.</li> </ol>
9. Promote a water saving mind set with construction/prospecting
workers in order to Contractor ensure less water wastage.
10. New stormwater construction must be developed strictly
according to specifications from engineers in order to ensure
efficiency.
11. Hazardous substances must be stored at least 20m from any
water bodies on site to avoid pollution.
12. The installation of the stormwater system must take place as soon
as possible to attenuate stormwater from the construction phase
as well as the operation phase.
13. Earth, stone and rubble is to be properly disposed of, or utilized
on site so as not to obstruct natural water path ways over the site.
i.e. these materials must not be placed in stormwater channels,
drainage lines or rivers.
14. There should be a periodic checking of the site's drainage system
to ensure that the water flow is unobstructed.
15. If a batching plant is necessary, run-off should be managed
effectively to avoid contamination of other areas of the site.
Untreated runoff from the batch plant must not be allowed to get
into the storm water system or nearby streams, rivers or erosion
channels or dongas.
Groundwater resource protection
16. Process solution storage ponds and other impoundments
designed to hold non fresh water or un-treated process effluents
•
should be lined and be equipped with sufficient wells to enable
monitoring of water levels and quality.

Sanitation	
17. Adequate sanitary facilities and ablutions must be provided for	
construction workers (1 toilet per every 15 workers).	
18. The facilities must be regularly serviced to reduce the risk of	
surface or groundwater pollution.	
Concrete mixing	
19. Concrete contaminated water must not enter soil or any natural	
drainage system as this disturbs the natural acidity of the soil and	
affects plant growth.	
Public areas	
20. Food preparation areas should be provided with adequate	
washing facilities and food refuse should be stored in sealed	
refuse bins which should be removed from site on a regular basis.	
•	
21. The Contractor should take steps to ensure that littering by	
construction workers does not occur and persons should be	
employed on site to collect litter from the site and immediate	
surroundings, including litter accumulating at fence lines.	
22. No washing or servicing of vehicles on site.	

Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon, including

- G) MONITORING OF IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
- H) MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY
- I) RESPONSIBLE PERSONS
- J) TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
- K) MECHANISM FOR MONITORING COMPLIANCE

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY and TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
Clearance of vegetation	Loss or fragmentation of habitats	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Prospecting without bulk sampling of the applied for minerals	Loss of topsoil Erosion Air Pollution Noise Impact on potential cultural, heritage artefacts and fossils	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Waste management	Pollution	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External

				audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.
Water Use and Quality	Water pollution	<ul> <li>Conduct regular internal audits</li> <li>Conduct regular external audits</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Suitable qualified environmental auditor</li> </ul>	Monitoring should be undertaken for duration of operations. Internal audits should be undertaken at least every 6 months. External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the competent authority if required.

# L) INDICATE THE FREQUENCY OF THE SUBMISSION OF THE PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENT REPORT.

External audits should be undertaken by a suitably qualified auditor on an annual basis. Reports should be made available to the Competent Authority if required.

## M) ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN

1. Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work.

**Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** will implement an Environmental Awareness Plan which will include various mechanisms for informing employees of environmental risks resulting from their work, including:

- Induction training for full -time staff and contractors;
- In-house training sessions to be held with relevant employees;
- On the job training regarding environmental issues
- Training and skills development

The above measures will be implemented through an Environmental Communication Strategy to be implemented.

See the attached **Appendix 11** for the Awareness plan

#### i. Manner in which risks will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.

**Mr Petrus Van Der Walt Vermeulen** will implement an incident reporting and reporting procedure in order to identify risks timeously and implement actions to avoid or minimise environmental impacts.

# N) SPECIFIC INFORMATION REQUIRED BY THE COMPETENT AUTHORITY

(Among others, Confirm that the financial provision will be reviewed annually).

No specific information requirements have been detailed by the Competent Authority.

-END-